A BRIEF GERMAN GRAMMAR WITH EXERCISES

BY

HJALMAR EDGREN, PH. D.
UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA

AND

LAURENCE FOSSLER, A. M.
UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA

NEW YORK -:- CINCINNATI -:- CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

EDGREN-FOSSLER'S GERMAN GRAMMAR

HEINTZEMANN 2.

PREFACE

THIS brief Grammar is designed for high school and college students, or students of equivalent training. It aims to prepare the way for critical reading, or for practice in writing and speaking, on the basis of a systematic knowledge of the essentials of German grammar and syntax and the elements of a German vocabulary rationally acquired.

The somewhat detailed rules of pronunciation are intended to be a sufficient aid even for self-instruction. In points of varying usage in pronunciation, Vietor (*Aussprache des Schriftdeutschen, German Pronunciation*, etc.) has been followed as authority.

The ordinary division of inflection and conjugation into Old and New has been adhered to, though reduced to its simplest terms, so as to be easily grasped and retained. The irrational and unhistorical separation, in paradigms, of masculine and neuter stems and of the nominative and accusative cases, inherited from the classical tongues and under their sway perpetuated to our own day, has been abandoned for a simpler and more logical arrangement. The so-called "compound tenses," which belong to a verb-paradigm with as much right as, for instance, oblique cases to a French noun-paradigm, are properly explained as verb-phrases with certain syntactical peculiarities. The irregular verbs are so arranged that the student by learning a few key-verbs — closely coinciding in vowel-gradation with their English cognates — has really possessed himself of this important topic. Objections that might be made against the supposed inconvenience of certain systematic groupings — as that of the auxiliary with the irregular verbs, etc., — are obviated by a different arrange-

ment in the Exercises, where need be, that will satisfy more immediate practical ends. Grammar proper and Syntax are not separated. But the Exercises are placed by themselves, where they will not obscure an easy survey of the entire field of grammar, nor impede ready reference.

Supplementary to the main purpose of the Exercises, there have been introduced into them two important subjects, usually, if touched upon at all, relegated to a back chapter of theoretical statement, viz., the subjects of word-formation and of German-English sound relations. While these topics in their detail belong to the advanced student only, a knowledge of their salient features, readily acquired, will be of immediate practical benefit to the beginner, and will serve at the same time as a lever for lifting his study of words out of the mere memorizing routine to a plane of comparison and judgment, while it will also quicken his desire for a more serious study of German. Great care has been exercised to furnish adequate material to illustrate kinship in form or etymological signification as between German and English.

The modern German spelling is adopted throughout. But as an aid in reading texts with the older spelling, a succinct statement of the discrepancies between older and modern orthography is given in 14. It is hoped that these and other more or less novel features may on actual trial recommend themselves to the approval of the experienced teacher. They are certainly introduced with an earnest desire to facilitate the acquisition of a language the study of which, owing to the great intellectual prominence of the nation using it, is becoming ever more imperative.

HJALMAR EDGREN.
LAURENCE FOSSLER.

LINCOLN, NEB., 1897.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Preface	5
Alphabet	9
Syllabication and Accents	10
Quantity	11
Sounds of Vowels	11
Sounds of Diphthongs	12
Sounds of Consonants	13
New Spelling	15
Vowel Modification (Umlaut)	16
Vowel Substitution (Ablaut)	16
Main Characteristics of Declension	17
Article	18
Article, Peculiarities of Construction with	19
Nouns, Gender	19
Declension, Old, New, Mixed	20
Declension, Endings	21
Declension, Examples of	22
Distribution of Nouns into Declensions	23
Foreign and Proper Nouns	26
Peculiarities of Noun Constructions	27
Prepositions Governing the Accusative, the Genitive	28
Prepositions with the Dative	30
Prepositions with Accusative and Dative	31
Adjectives, Declension, Old, New, Mixed	32
Adjectives, Comparison of	35
Adjectives used as Nouns	36
Numerals	37
Numerals, Peculiarities of Construction with	38
Personal Pronouns	39
Personal Peculiarities of Use	40
Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns	42
Demonstrative Pronouns	44

Page

Demonstratives, Peculiarities of Use 45
Interrogative Pronouns 47
Relative Pronouns 48
Indefinite Pronouns 50
Verbs 51
Example of New (or Regular) Conjugation 53
Anomalous Verbs 54
Conjugation of haben 55
The so-called Modal Auxiliaries 56
The Old (or Irregular) Conjugation 57
Classes of Old Verbs 58
Conjugation of werden 64
Conjugation of sein 65
Alphabetical Reference List 66
Compound Verbs 72
Simple Verb Phrases 74
Phrases with werden 77
Phrases with Modal Auxiliaries 78
Complex Verb Phrases 79
Passive Voice 80
Tenses 82
Subjunctive, Optative 84
Subjunctive, Potential, Conditional 85
Subjunctive of Indirect Statement 86
Infinitive 87
Participle 88
Reflexive Construction 89
Adverbs 91
Conjunctions 93
Interjections 94
Order of Words in the Sentence 95

Exercises:

I Vowels and Diphthongs 98
II Consonants 100
III Articles, Old Declension Nouns, Class I 101
IV Articles, Old Declension Nouns, Class II 103
V Old Declension Nouns, Class III 105
VI New Declension Nouns 107
VII Nouns of the Mixed Declension 108
VIII Irregular Declension 110

		Page
IX	Foreign and Proper Nouns	111
X	Peculiarities of Noun Construction	113
XI	Peculiarities, etc., Continued	115
XII	Adjectives	116
XIII	Adjectives, Continued	118
XIV	Numerals	120
XV	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	121
XVI	Pronouns, Continued	123
XVII	Pronouns, Continued	124
XVIII	Interrogative and Relative Pronouns	126
XIX	Indefinite Pronouns	128
	Derivation and Sound Correspondences; Grimm's Law	129
XX	Conjugation of Verbs	137
XXI	Anomalous Verbs	138
XXII	The Old Conjugation	140
XXIII	Old Conjugation, Continued	141
XXIV	Old Conjugation, Continued	143
XXV	Old Conjugation, Continued	146
XXVI	Old Conjugation, Continued	148
XXVII	General Review of Old Conjugation Verbs	149
XXVIII	German Proverbs	150
XXIX	Compound Verbs	152
XXX	Compound Verbs, Continued	155
XXXI	Verb Phrases	157
XXXII	Verb Phrases, Continued	158
XXXIII	Peculiarities of Use and Construction	160
XXXIV	Peculiarities of Use, etc., Continued	161
XXXV	Indeclinables	162
XXXVI	Order of Words in the Sentence	164
	German Script	165
	English-German Vocabulary	167
	Index	175

GERMAN GRAMMAR

LETTERS AND SOUNDS

THE ALPHABET

1. The German alphabet contains the same letters as the English, with the addition of the so-called modified vowels, ä, ö, ü. Although the use of the Roman character is increasing in Germany, most works are still printed in a mediaeval type closely resembling the Old English.

German character	German name	English character	German character	German name	English character
𝔄, 𝔞	ā	a	𝔑, 𝔫	ěn	n
𝔅, 𝔟	bē	b	𝔒, 𝔬	ō	o
ℭ, 𝔠	cē (tsē)	c	𝔓, 𝔭	pē	p
𝔇, 𝔡	dē	d	𝔔, 𝔮	kū	q
𝔈, 𝔢	ē	e	𝔎, 𝔯	ěr	r
𝔉, 𝔣	ěf	f	𝔖, 𝔰, ſ	ěs	s
𝔊, 𝔤	gē	g	𝔗, 𝔱	tē	t
ℌ, 𝔥	hā	h	𝔘, 𝔲	ū	u
ℑ, 𝔦	ī	i	𝔙, 𝔳	fau	v
ℑ, 𝔧	jŏd (jot)	j	𝔚, 𝔴	vē	w
𝔎, 𝔨	kā	k	𝔛, 𝔵	ĭx	x
𝔏, 𝔩	ěl	l	𝔜, 𝔶	ĭpsilon	y
𝔐, 𝔪	ěm	m	ℨ, 𝔷	tsět	z

Modified vowels: 𝔄̈, ä, *ä*; 𝔒̈, ö, *ö*; 𝔘̈, ü, *ü*.

Consonant digraphs: ch, *ch*; ck, *ck*; ß, *sz* (properly for *ss*); tz, *tz*.

SYLLABLES

2. Division. In dividing words at the end of a line, single consonants as well as the combinations ch, ck, ß, sch, dt — all denoting a simple sound — are placed with the succeeding vowel: Ga-be, lo-ben, lä-cheln, Stra-ße, Stä-dter, lö-schen. In case two or more medial consonants occur, the last one only is placed with the following vowel: Trop-fen, Wüs-te, fal-len, soll-te, Kat-ze.

3. Prefixes and other component members retain their identity: Ein-übung, un-ab-hängig.

4. Sp, pf, st, tz, are sometimes treated like single consonants in being carried to the second syllable: Wü-ste, Ka-tze, Tro-pfen.

PRONUNCIATION

5. In pronouncing German words regard must be had to their accent and the quantity of their vowels as well as to the sounds proper.

6. Accent. Simple words ordinarily have the accent on the initial syllable: ha'ben, Mor'gen. The chief exceptions are:

1. Verbs in -ieren and nouns in -ei: rasie'ren, Malerei'.

2. Most borrowed words, when not fully naturalized; these ordinarily accent the final syllable: Regiment', Philosophie'; but Ti'tel, Dok'tor, etc.

7. Compounds also, for the most part, accent the initial syllable, except in the case of certain prepositional prefixes. But a weaker stress is apt to be placed also on other members of the compound: fahr'zeug`, Ap'felbaum`; but be-rei'ten, etc.

8. Quantity. The stress-vowel is long: —

1. When doubled (also ie = ī), and before or after silent h: Haar, Seele, barbieren; Bahn, Thor.

2. When final, and before a single consonant (except in monosyllabic indeclinables not ending in r): da, so; haben, Rat, her.

3. Often before rd, rt: Erde, Art.

In other cases it is usually short: Falle, senden, ab.

Sounds of the Letters

9. **Simple Vowels**

a: Long as in *far:* Gabe, haben. Sometimes this sound is denoted by aa: Saal, Aal.
Short as in *on:* Falle, kann.

ä: Long as in *fare*, without glide: wäre, mähen.
Short as in *met:* Fälle, Äste.

e: Long as in *they*, without glide (= French *ê*): leben, Lehre. Sometimes this sound is denoted by ee: Beet, Heer.
Short as in *met:* denn, kennen.
Unaccented e is dimmed, somewhat like *e* in *begin:* begehren, habe.

i: Long as in *pique:* Tiger, Igel.
Short, the same sound shortened, though approaching *i* in *pin*, except in open unaccented syllables: in, finde; Militär'.

ie is written for long i in many words: die, Liebe. In final unaccented syllables of foreign words, ie is frequently diphthongal: Lini-e, Fami'li-e; but Geologie' (gī), etc.

o: Long as in *no* (without glide, and the lips rather closer): lobe, toben, Ohr. Sometimes this sound is denoted by oo: Boot, Moos.

Short, the same sound shortened, but slightly more open: ob (*op*), ſolle, Gott.

ö: Long (= French long *eu*), resembling *u* in *fur*, but pronounced with the lips nearer the lower teeth, forming a narrower rounded aperture: ſchön, Töne, Höhle.

Short, the same sound shortened and rather more open: Köln, Hölle.

u: Long, as in *rule*: Stuhl, Blume.

Short, as in *pull*: null, Mutter.

ü: Long, between *oo* and *ee* (prepare to utter *oo*, and then, without change of the lips, utter *ee*): für, führe, Thüre, über, Gemüt.

Short, the same sound shortened: dünn, Hülle, Hütte.

y: Long, like long i or ü (the latter chiefly in foreign words not fully naturalized, though the i-sound may be used throughout): Mythe (*meete* or *müte*), Aſyl'.

Short, the same sound shortened: Gyps, Syſtem'.

10. Diphthongs

ai, ei: Like *ey* in *eye*: Mai, Kaiſer, Ei, leiſten.

au: Like *ou* in *house*: aus, Haus, brauſen.

äu, eu: Like *oi* in *oil*, but with the *o*-sound shorter and more rounded: Säule, Mäuſe, Eule, neu.

EXERCISE I (page 98)

---

11. Simple Consonants and Consonant Digraphs

Where not differently stated, the German consonants are pronounced as in English.

b: Final, or before a consonant (except r, l, of its own root) = *p*: ab, lebte, Ab-laut; but blau, ver-brenn'en.

c: Before a high vowel (e, i, y, ä) = *ts* in *sits*: Ceder, civil', Cäsar, Cyril'.

ch: 1. After a, o, u, au, it is a back-palatal rasp (*k*-position, without complete contact of the tongue; cf. *ch*, *gh*, in Scotch *loch*, *McLaughlin*): ach, Achtung; hoch, Tochter; Buch, suchen; Rauch.

2. After e, i, y, ä, ö, eu, äu, or a consonant, it is a front-palatal rasp (made between the middle of the tongue and the middle of the hard palate): Pech, mancher; ich, Lichter; Fächer, Löcher; feucht, räuchern.

3. Before a low vowel or a consonant in Latin and Greek words, and before radical s in German words = *k*: Chaos, Charak'ter, Choral', Chlor; Wachs, sechs.

4. Before a high vowel in Latin and Greek words, it is a front-palatal rasp: Chemie', Chirurg'.

5. In words from the French = *sh*: Chef, charmant', Chaussee'.

d: Final, or before a consonant (except r, l of its own root) = *t*: Bad, Abend, Mädchen, stünd-lich; but dringen, An-drang. In German, d is formed nearer the teeth than in English. dt = *t*.

g: 1. Initial, or medial before the stress-vowel = *g* in *go*: gab, geben, Gruß; bege'ben.

2. Otherwise like German ch (1, 2), made sonant however between vowels, or a vowel and r, l, n:

Tag, tagte, Sieg, siegte; (sonant) Tage, siegen, regnen, Berge.

NOTE. — This pronunciation (recommended by VIETOR) is not universal, varied usages prevailing in different parts of Germany (e.g. medial g always like surd ch in Middle Germany, but like hard g in South Germany and Hanover, etc.).

h: Silent before a consonant, an unaccented e, and when final: Jahr; gehen; weh.

j: Like *y* in *you:* Jahr, jeder, beja'hen.

ng: (radical) = *ng* in *ring*, never like *ng* in *finger:* Finger, singen, sang.

qu = *kv* (Ger. kw): Qual, Quelle.

r: Trilled (i.e. made by vibrating the tip of the tongue against the upper gum): roh, Lehre, er.

NOTE. — A palatal r (rather like back-palatal ch) is in very common use.

s (ß, final of a syllable): 1. = *s* in *sky:* Skalde, best, Gras.

2. = *sh* before t, p, as initial of a stress-syllable: Stahl, spalten; bestel'len, Gespann'.

3. = *z* (only slightly voiced) as initial before a vowel, or between vowels: so, Rose.

sch = *sh* in *she*, but fuller, being produced without near contact between the tongue and hard palate: Schall, rauschen.

ss (ß after a long vowel; before a consonant; as final) = *s* in *sky;* Straße, läßt, friß.

t(h) = *t* (but more dental): Tag; Thal. But t = *ts* where in English its sound is *sh* (i.e., usually in the combinations -tion, -tient, etc., from Latin): Nation', rational', Patient'.

v = *f* in German words and common loan-words (always as final); = *v* in less common loan-words: von, Vater, viel, Vers, brav; — Vase, oval', Venus.

w = English *v* (though in **sch-w** formed with the lips, not as in English with the upper teeth and lower lips): **wo, wahr, bewe'gen; schwer.**

z = *ts* as in *its*: **zu, zahlen, ziehen, tanzen.**

Double Consonants

12. Double consonants serve to denote shortness of the preceding vowel, and are pronounced like the simple consonants, except where they occur as the final and initial letters of two words in composition, when they are protracted in utterance: **hatte, sollen, nennen**; but **um-machen, mit-teilen.**

NOTE.—**gg** is always hard as in *go*: **Flagge**; **cc** = *kts* before **e, i**: **Accent'**, etc.

13. Exceptions to the preceding rules of pronunciation occur chiefly in foreign words, which have often retained more or less of their native utterance.

EXERCISE II

NEW SPELLING

14. The spelling of many German words has recently been reformed, especially with a view of simplifying certain unnecessary digraphs in German words, and of substituting **f, z** for *c* in many fully naturalized loan-words. The new spelling (followed in this book) is gradually being introduced into recent German texts and dictionaries. To aid the student using modernized texts to find his words in dictionaries with the older spelling, a key to existing discrepancies is appended below.

Modern	Ä, Ö, Ü				=	Older	Ae, Oe, Ue
"	a, e, o	in	several	words	=	"	aa, ee, oo
"	e	"	"	"	=	"	ä
"	ie	"	-ieren		=	"	i
"	ß	in	several	words	=	"	c
"	f	"	"	"	=	"	ph
"	t	"	"	"	=	"	th, dt
"	z	"	"	"	=	"	c

CAPITALS

15. Initial capitals are used: —

1. In words beginning a sentence or verse line.

2. In nouns, or words used as nouns. Also in pronouns of address (except sich); in those of the second person chiefly in letter-writing.

NOTES — 1. Some modern (especially scientific) writers do not capitalize common nouns.

2. Usage varies for indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives used substantively.

3. Ordinarily in proper adjectives (except of nationality, as englisch, *English*, etc.), and in adjectives of title or respectful address.

VOWEL CHANGES

16. German words frequently change the radical vowel in inflection and conjugation. These changes may be of two different kinds, modification and substitution.

17. Vowel Modification (Umlaut) is the change of the low vowels a, o, u, au to ä, ö, ü, äu, or of e to i(e). These changes, originally effected by the assimilating influence of a following i (j), were later extended by analogy. E.g. Mann, pl. Männer: cf. English *man*, pl. *men*.

18. Vowel Substitution (Ablaut) is a change of the radical vowel of the Old verbs, ultimately caused, in the main, by accentual variation: fallen, Pret. fiel; cf. English *fall*, *fell*.

DECLENSION

19. German and English both belong to one group of languages, called the Germanic. Their parent speech had more inflectional forms than either of them has now. But while English has attained the greatest inflectional simplicity, German is much less removed, in this respect, from the state of the parent speech, and is about as rich in form-changes as was once Old English (Anglo-Saxon).

20. The following are the main characteristics of German declension (of articles, nouns, adjectives, numerals, and pronouns) as compared with English.

21. Gender. German, like English, has three genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. But masculine and feminine may denote grammatical gender as well as natural sex.

22. Number. German, like English, has two numbers: Singular and Plural. But the plural form is in German much more varied for large groups of words.

23. Case. German distinguishes more fully than English different case-relations by different forms. The German cases are: —

The Nominative, corresponding to the English subject case.

The Accusative, corresponding in general to the case of the direct object in English, or used as an absolute Accusative of time, etc.

The Genitive, corresponding (1) to the English possessive case in *'s*; (2) to an English adnominal case with *of* (e.g. *the bark of the tree*); (3) to the English objective after certain verbs and prepositions.

The Dative, corresponding (1) to an English objective with *to* or *for* (expressed or implied); (2) to the English objective after certain verbs and prepositions.

24. German articles, adjectives and pronouns, unlike the English (with rare exceptions for some pronouns), may assume different forms for different genders, and within these again for different cases in different numbers, to agree with the noun they determine.

NOTE. — The student should observe that the masculine and neuter of the above words (**24**) are declined alike except in the Nominative-Accusative singular, while feminines (coming from a different stem) generally differ from them in all the cases of the singular. He will find it an advantage, therefore, to learn their declensions in this order.

ARTICLES

25. German, like English, has two articles: the definite der, *the*, and the indefinite ein, *a(n)*. They are declined as follows:—

	der:			ein:		
Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	d-er	d-as	d-ie	ein	ein	ein-e
Acc.	d-en	d-as	d-ie	ein-en	ein	ein-e
Gen.	d-es		d-er	ein-es		ein-er
Dat.	d-em		d-er	ein-em		ein-er
Plur.:						
N. A.	d-ie			No plural.		
G.	d-er					
D.	d-en					

NOTE. — In colloquial or poetical language some of the forms of the article may be abbreviated: 's for das, 'ne for eine, 'nen for einen.

26. Contractions. The following are the more ordinary contractions of the definite article and certain prepositions: —

in dem	=	im, *in the*
in das (Acc.)	=	ins, *into the*
von dem	=	vom, *of (from) the*
zu dem	=	zum, *to the*
zu der (Dat. f.)	=	zur, *to the*
auf das (Acc.)	=	aufs, *upon the*

27. Peculiarities of Construction. German ordinarily requires the definite article in the following constructions where it is not used in English.

1. Before nouns used in a generic sense: das Gold, *gold* (in general); der Mensch, *man.*

2. Instead of a possessive, where no ambiguity would arise: er schüttelt den Kopf, *he shakes his head.*

3. Before names of measure, weight, etc., where English has the distributive *a:* es kostet eine Mark das Pfund, *it costs a mark a pound.*

4. Before names of seasons, months, and days: der Sommer, *summer;* der März, *March;* der Sonntag, *Sunday.*

5. Before names of streets: die Königstraße, *King Street.*

6. Before names of countries, only when feminine: die Schweiz, *Switzerland;* die Türkei, *Turkey.*

7. Before names of persons, more or less optionally, to denote case: wir lesen den Goethe, *we read Goethe.*

28. Before predicate nouns denoting occupation or condition, no article is used: er ist (wird) Doktor, *he is (will be) a doctor.*

NOUNS

29. Gender. The subject of gender in German is exceedingly complicated. The following brief rules merely serve to give the student his general bearings in a field which can be mastered only by long practice.

30. Names of Living Beings. Names of male beings are masculine, names of female beings are feminine. But Weib, *woman*, and all diminutives (in -chen, -lein) are neuter.

31. Derivative Nouns not denoting sex may be grouped thus: —

Masculine are most nouns in -er, -el, -en, or -ich, -ig, -ing, -ling, not included in the rule below.

Neuter are all diminutives (in -chen, -lein) and Infinitives (in -en); most nouns in -sal, -sel, -tum, -nis; most nouns beginning with Ge-; and most names of countries and places not ending in -e, -ei.

Feminine are most nouns in a vowel (all in -ei, most in -e), and all in -heit, -keit, -schaft, -ung.

The gender of monosyllabics is best learned as they occur, though most monosyllabic derivatives are masculine.

NOTE. — Compound nouns usually have the gender of their final member.

32. Declension. German nouns are declined by the addition of certain endings to the Nominative sing., and a modification of the root-vowel (17) in the plural. But some nouns form part of their cases without added endings, and a great many form their plural without vowel-modification.

33. There are three declensions: —

The **Old,** still retaining some old inflectional endings, and often modifying the root-vowel in the plural.

The **New,**[1] having only one inflectional ending -(e)n and no vowel-modification.

---

[1] The Old and New declensions are also frequently called the Strong and Weak.

The **Mixed,** inflected in the singular like the Old, in the plural like the New declensions.

34. Declensional Endings. These are given below in tabular form, vowel-modifications in the plural being also denoted. To avoid needless repetition, however, it is stated here once for all that in ordinary use (cf. **43**, 4; **46**, 1) no endings are ever added to feminine nouns in the singular.

	Old Declension			New Decl.	Mixed Decl.
Sing.:	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV	Class V
Nom.					
Acc.					
Gen.	-s	-(e)s	-(e)s		-(e)s
Dat.		-(e)	-(e)	-(e)n	
Plur.:	often vowel-mod.		vowel-mod.		
N. A. G.		-e	-er		-en
Dat.	-n	-en	-ern		

NOTES. — 1. The use of -es, -en or -s, -n is a matter of euphony (partly of option), -es, -en occurring chiefly after a hissing sound (cf. English *mass-es, church-es*) or d, t.

2. The ending -n (Dat. pl., Cl. I) is not added to stems in n : Garten, pl. Dat. Gärten.

3. The -e of the Dat. sing. (II, III) is, optionally, added to monosyllabic nouns only.

4. Nouns in -in, -nis double n, s before a case-ending: Fürstin, pl. Fürstinn-en ; Gleichnis, Gen. sing., Gleichniss-es.

35. Modification of the Root-vowel (Umlaut). The tendency to modify the root-vowels a, o, u, au in the plural to ä, ö, ü, äu (cf. **17**), though affecting a great number of the nouns of the Old declension, does not affect all. The chief exceptions are: —

1. About fifty monosyllabic masculines and nearly all monosyllabic neuters of Class II.

2. Feminines in -nis, -sal.

3. Polysyllabic neuters, except diminutives in -chen and -lein (nouns in -tum, however, modifying the u of that ending: -tümer).

NOTE. — Only four monosyllabic neuters of Class II, Floß, *raft*, Chor, *choir*, and optionally Boot, *boat*, Rohr, *reed*, and one polysyllabic neuter of Class I, Kloster, *cloister*, modify the vowel.

EXAMPLES OF INFLECTION

Old Declension

36.

	Class I		Class II		Class III	
	Masc.[1]	Fem.	Masc.[1]	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.
	Vater	Mutter	Tag	Hand	Mann	Haus
	FATHER	MOTHER	DAY	HAND	MAN	HOUSE
	Singular					
N. A.	Vater	Mutter	Tag	Hand	Mann	Haus
G.	Vater-s	Mutter	Tag-es	Hand	Mann-es	Hauſ-es
D.	Vater	Mutter	Tag(-e)	Hand	Mann(-e)	Haus(-ſe)
	Plural					
N.A.G.	Väter	Mütter	Tage	Händ-e	Männ-er	Häuſ-er
D.	Väter-n	Mütter-n	Tag-en	Händ-en	Männ-ern	Häuſ-ern

New Declension — **Mixed Declension**

	Class IV		Class V
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.[1]
	Menſch	Königin	Staat
	Man	*Queen*	*State*
	Singular		
N.	Menſch	Königin	Staat
A.	Menſch-en	Königin	Staat
G.	Menſch-en	Königin	Staat-es
D.	Menſch-en	Königin	Staat(-e)
	Plural		
N. A. G. D.	Menſch-en	Königinn-en	Staat-en

37. All German nouns not specially excepted as irregular follow one or the other of the above models of declension (observing **34**, notes, and **35**). Thus: —

[1] The neuter is similarly inflected.

Old I, *m.*: sing. Käſe, CHEESE, -s, -; pl. -, -n.
n.: sing. Mädchen, MAID, -s, -; pl. -, - (**34**, 2)
II, *m.*: sing. Monat, MONTH, -s, -; pl. -e, -en.
n.: sing. Jahr, YEAR, -es, -(e); pl. -e, -en.
n.: sing. Gefängnis, *prison;* Gefängniſſ-es (**34**, 4), -; pl. -e, -en.
III, *n.*: sing. Irrtum, *error*, -s, -; pl. Irrtüm-er (**35**), -ern.
New IV, *m.*: sing. Student', *student*, -en; pl. -en.
f.: sing. Seite, SIDE, pl. -n.
Mixed V, *n.*: sing. Auge, EYE, -s, -; pl. -n.

38. Distribution of Nouns in Declensions. The main difficulty of declension consists in determining to what declensional class a noun belongs. Though this subject must be mastered by long practice rather than by detailed rules, the following brief survey will be helpful to the student:

39. Masculine Nouns are distributed thus: —

Class I: masculines in -er, -el, -en.

Class II: most polysyllabic masculines and monosyllabic (verb) derivatives not ending in -er, -el, -en, or -e.

Class III: nine monosyllabic and two polysyllabic masculines, viz.: —

Geiſt, Gott, Leib, Mann, Ort (also II), Rand, Strauch (also II), Wald, Wurm; Böſewicht (also II), Vormund.

Class IV: masculines in -e; and twenty-one monosyllabic masculines (chiefly sex nouns), viz.: —

Ahn, Bär, Burſch, Chriſt, Fink, Fürſt, Graf, Held, Herr, Hirt, Menſch, Mohr, Narr, Nerv, Ochs, Prinz, Schenk, Schöps, Spatz, Strauß, Thor.

Class V: Many masculines of foreign origin (among these all in '-or, which shift the accent to -or' in the plural); and fifteen German masculines, viz.:—

Bauer, Gevatter, Lorbeer, Maſt, Muskel, Nachbar, Pantoffel, Schmerz (**43**, 2), See, Staat, Stachel, Strahl, Untertan, Vetter, Zierat.

40. Neuter Nouns are distributed thus: —

Class I: polysyllabic neuters not ending in -tum.

Class II: a few neuters, especially those in -nis, -sal.

Class III: most monosyllabic neuters, and those in -tum.

Class V: only Auge, Bett, Ende, Hemd, Ohr, Weh.

41. Feminine Nouns are distributed thus: —

Class I: only Mutter, Tochter.

Class II: about forty monosyllabic feminines whose radical vowel is modified in the plural; and all polysyllabic feminines in -kunft, -nis, -sal.

Class IV: about sixty monosyllabic feminines whose radical vowel is not modified in the plural; and all polysyllabic feminines not belonging to I or II.

42. Besides the gender of each noun, dictionaries indicate also its Gen. sing. and Nom. pl., with the vowel-modification when there is one, thus fully defining its declension. E.g. Vater, m., -s, Väter, (i.e. Vater, masc., Gen. sing. Vaters, Nom. pl. Väter), Tag, m., -es, -e, etc.[1]

EXERCISES III–VII

---

43. Irregular Declension. Owing mainly to an incomplete transfer of certain nouns from one stem form to another, or the retention in part of archaic forms, the following irregularities in declension arise: —

1. Some masculines, chiefly abstract, that may end in -e or -en (the newer and less common ending, except in Schaden), are inflected from the latter form according the Old I, though none except Schaden, modifies its root-vowel: sing. N. Name(n), G. Namen-s, D. Nam-en; pl. Namen. They are: —

---

[1] Systems of abbreviations vary: Vater, -rs, "-; Tag, -ges, -ge; etc.

Friede(n), *peace*	Haufe(n), HEAP
Funke(n), *spark*	Name(n), NAME
Gedanke(n), THOUGHT	Schade(n), *harm*
Glaube(n), BELIEF	Wille(n), WILL

NOTE. — Fels or Felsen, m., *rock*, and Buchstab(e), m. *letter*, may be inflected in the same way or according to the New declension.

2. Herz, *n.*, HEART, is partially inflected from a stem in -en (Herz, -ens, -en; pl. -en); and Schmerz, *m.*, *pain*, SMART (usually of the Mixed declension), may be so declined.

3. Herr, *master*, *gentleman*, *Mr.*, of the New declension, shortens the ending to -n in the singular. Herr, -n; pl. Herr-en.

4. In archaic use and in some stereotyped phrases, feminines of the New declension retain in the singular (especially in the Dative) an earlier ending (e)n: in der Erde-n, *in the earth;* mit Ehre-n, *honorably;* von Gottes Gnade-n, *by the grace of God*, etc. In composition this retention is common.

EXERCISE VIII

---

44. Variable Declension. Quite a number of nouns have more than one case-form, examples of which have already been noted. Others have more than one plural form with different significations: —

Band,	m. Bände, BIND*ings*, *volumes* n. Bande, BONDS, *fetters* n. Bänder, BANDS, *ribbons*
Land, n.	Lande, *regions* Länder, *countries*
Ort, m.	Orte, *regions* Örter, *places* (towns)
Wort, n.	Worte, WORDS (sayings) Wörter, (independent, isolated) *words*

45. Foreign Nouns. Most nouns of foreign origin are declined like German nouns, as already described. Among exceptions may be noticed: —

1. Nouns in -(i)um, and many in accented -al, form their Gen. sing. in -s, and their pl. in -(i)en; those in -(i)um by changing -um to -en; those in -al, -il by adding -ien: Studium, n., *study*; Gen. sing. Studium-s, pl. Studi-en; Material, n., *material:* Gen. sing. Material-s, pl. Material-ien.

Also some others form a plural in -en: Drama, pl. Dram-en, etc.

2. A few nouns, mostly of technical use, retain foreign plurals: pl. Casus, Modi, Facta, Lords, Beefsteaks.

Proper Names

46. Names of Persons. Names of persons are either inflected or uninflected in connection with some determinative denoting case.

1. Inflected. — Masculines and feminines: Gen. sing. -s ('s); or -(e)ns in masculines ending in a sibilant — s, x, z, tz —, and in feminines in -e: Acc. and Dat. sometimes -(e)n, but usually, and preferably, without case-suffix. Ex.: Nom. sing. Ludwig, Max, Marie'. Gen. Ludwigs, Maxens, Mariens (pron. Mari'ens); Acc.-Dat. Ludwig(en), Marie(n).

Note. — Biblical names are usually inflected as in Latin: Christ-us, -i, -o, -um, etc.

2. Uninflected. — Frequently names of persons are construed with the definite article, which then alone shows the case: der Bruder des Karl (or Karls Bruder); die Schwester der Marie (or Mariens Schwester). So, likewise, they are uninflected in connection with other determinatives,

such as pronouns, etc., or an inflected noun in apposition: die Lieder unseres Schiller, *the songs of our Schiller;* der Bruder des Generals Blücher; die Hosen des Herrn (von) Bredow (not Bredow's).

3. But Herr used before titles, such as Graf, *Count;* Professor, *Professor;* Rat, *Counselor,* etc., does not prevent their inflection: des Herrn Grafen; den Herren Räten, des Herrn Professors.

47. Geographical Names take -s, in the Gen. sing., unless they end in a sibilant, in which case they are construed with von, *of* (as in English), or in some other way: Berlins, *of Berlin;* von Paris, *of Paris.*

EXERCISE IX

PECULIARITIES OF NOUN CONSTRUCTION

Only such peculiarities of construction are noted as are more or less characteristic of German as compared with English.

Nominative or Accusative

48. 1. Nouns expressing measure, weight, quantity, are followed by a noun without *of,* as if in apposition. So also Monat, *month,* nouns of geographical distinction, and ordinals expressing date: eine Elle Tuch, *an ell of cloth;* das Königreich Italien, *the kingdom of Italy;* den ersten (Acc.) März, *the first of March.*

2. If, however, the second noun is qualified by an adjective, it is usually in the Genitive: ein Glas guten Weines, *a glass of good wine.*

49. After numerals, nouns of measure (except feminines in -e) usually have the singular form: drei Fuß, *three feet;* zehn Mark, *ten Marks;* so also, zehn Uhr (originally *hour*), *ten o'clock.*

The Accusative

50. The Accusative is required after the following prepositions: —

durch, THROUGH
für, FOR
um, *around*
ohne, *without*
gegen, gen, *towards*, *a*GAINST
wider, *against*

(Cf. also **56**.)

NOTE. — Bis, *till, up to*, is often used with other prepositions: bis an, bis nach, hinter, etc.

51. The Accusative is further used: —

1. To express Time When, and Measure of Time, Space, etc.: er kommt jeden Tag, *he comes every day;* einen Tag bleiben, *to remain a day.*

2. Rarely as a second Accusative: ich lehre das Kind die Musik, *I teach the child music.*

NOTE. — German often requires a prepositional construction where English has a second Accusative: ich halte den Mann für einen Freund, *I consider the man my friend.*

The Genitive

52. The Genitive is required after the following prepositions: —

kraft, *in virtue* (*of*)
laut, *of the tenor* (*of*)
statt, *in*STEAD (*of*)
halb(en, -er), *on account* (*of*)
mittel-s, *by means* (*of*)
weg-en, *for the sake* (*of*)
während, *during*
an-statt[1], *in*STEAD (*of*)
außer-halb, OUT*side* (*of*)
inner-halb, *inside* (*of*)
ober-halb, *ab*OVE
unter-halb, *below*
vermöge, *by dint* (*of*)
dies-seit(s), *on this* SIDE (*of*)
jen-seit(s), *be*YOND
un-fern, *not* FAR *from*
un-weit, *not far from*
un-geachtet, *notwithstanding*
um . . . willen, *on account of*

Observe that these prepositions, almost without exception, are or contain nouns pressed into prepositional service;

[1] Double hyphens here as elsewhere are used as a conventional sign to separate members of a compound (really written together; anstatt, etc.).

and that for the most part they are to be rendered in English by a noun with *of*.

1. Halb(en, halber) always, and wegen, ungeachtet, generally follow their noun.

2 Längs, *along*, trotz, *in spite of*, may take the Genitive or Dative: ob, *on account of*, takes the Genitive, ob, *over*, the Dative; zufolge, *in consequence of*, takes the Genitive when placed before its noun, and the Dative when placed after it.

53. The Genitive is further used: —

1. As a Possessive before or after the determined noun (the former construction being rare with impersonal nouns): des Knaben Buch or das Buch des Knaben, *the boy's book*.

2. Ordinarily for an English noun with *of* after a noun or adjective: das Fenster des Hauses, *the window of the house;* er ist der Sache müde, *he is tired of the thing*.

NOTE. — There are various exceptions, as after names of titles (der König von Preußen, *the King of Prussia*); before names of materials (die Bank von Stein, *the stone bench*, etc.).

3. After many verbs which in English require a direct object or a prepositional construction (chiefly with *of*). Such verbs are: bedürfen, *need*, *be in need of;* gedenken, *think* or *be mindful of;* brauchen, *use*, *make use of;* mahnen, *warn*, etc.: ich bedarf des Geldes, *I need the money;* ich gedenke seiner, *I think of him*.

4. For various English adverbial phrases: des Morgens, *in the morning;* eines Tages, *one day;* frohen Mutes, *with gladsome heart*.

EXERCISE X

The Dative

54. The Dative is required after the following prepositions: —

aus, OUT	mit, *with*	samt, *together with*
außer, OUT*side*, *except*	nach, *after*, *to* (a place)	seit, *since*
bei, BY, *near*	nächst, *next*	von, *from*, *of*
binnen, WITHIN (*time*)	nebst, *along with*	zu, TO (a person), *for*

ent-gegen, *towards*	ge-mäß, *according to*
gegen-über, *opposite*	zu-wider, *against*, *contrary to*

(Cf. also **56.**)

1. Entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß, zuwider usually follow their noun; nach, *according to*, is also postpositive.

2. *To* is rendered by nach chiefly before names of places, and by zu in other relations.

55. The Dative is further used: —

1. Often to express the Person or Thing Concerned (Dative of Interest) where English has *from* or a possessive: er nahm dem Knaben das Buch, *he took the book from the boy*, or *he took the boy's book away.*

2. After many verbs (chiefly such as may have *to* in English, but also others), as: antworten, *answer;* danken, *thank;* dienen, *serve;* helfen, *help;* bringen, *bring;* sagen, *say*, *tell*, etc.: er antwortet (dankt, sagt) dem Manne, *he answers* (*thanks*, *tells*) *the man.*

3. After some impersonal phrases like es ahnt mir (Dative), *I have a foreboding;* mir wird übel, *I feel sick*, etc.

4. After many adjectives (chiefly such as may have *to*, *for* in English): ich bin dem Manne dankbar, *I am thankful to the man;* er ist dem Knaben ähnlich, *he is like* (*similar to*) *the boy.*

Accusative or Dative

56. The following prepositions take either the Dative or the Accusative: —

an, ON, *to*	neben, *beside, next*	vor, *be*FORE
in, IN(*to*)	über, OVER	hinter, *be*HIND
auf, UP*on*	unter, UNDER	zwischen, *be*TWEEN

They require the Accusative to express motion towards or into anything, or a change of place or condition; but the Dative when no such motion or change is implied.

Accusative	Dative
Er warf sich **ins** (in das) Wasser. *He threw himself into the water.*	Er schwimmt **im** (in dem) Wasser. *He swims in the water.*
Er setzt sich auf **den** Stuhl. *He sits down upon the chair.*	Er sitzt auf **dem** Stuhle. *He sits on the chair.*
Der Adler flog über **die** Wolken. *The eagle soared up above the clouds.*	Der Adler fliegt über **den** Wolken. *The eagle soars over the clouds* (being there already).
Ich denke an **die** Sache. *I think of* (Ger. an, *towards*) *the thing.*	Das Bild hängt an **der** Wand. *The picture hangs on the wall.*

NOTE. — When motion or position is not clearly implied, auf and über take the Accusative, the others the Dative: auf diese Weise, *in this manner;* heute über acht Tage, *a week from to-day;* but vor acht Tagen, *a week ago.*

EXERCISE XI

ADJECTIVES

57. Adjectives are in German either inflected to agree in gender, case and number with the noun they qualify, whether expressed or understood; or they remain, as in English, invariable.

58. Inflection. Adjectives are inflected when used attributively (ein gut-er Mann, *a good man*) or as nouns (die Gut-en, *the good*); otherwise not.

59. Declension. There are three different declensions of adjectives as of nouns. But, unlike the nouns, every adjective may, as a rule, be inflected according to any one of these declensions according as it is used with or without certain determinatives, and within each in a different way according as it is to be made masculine, feminine, or neuter.

60. The declensions and general principles of inflection are: —

1. The **Old,** with endings much like those of der (more exactly dieser). The adjective follows this fuller declension when preceded by no declinable determinative, the deficiency being thus supplied by the adjective itself.

2. The **New,** with the ending -en throughout, except in the Nominative and (neut., fem.) Accusative sing. Adjectives follow this much simpler declension when they are preceded by a determinative inflected like der, thus showing sufficiently gender and case.

The Old and New declensions are also called the Strong and Weak.

3. The **Mixed,** like the Old in the Nominative and Accusative sing., like the New in other cases. Adjectives follow this declension when preceded by a determinative inflected like ein (i.e. with fewer endings than der).

61. DECLENSIONAL ENDINGS

	Old Declension			New Declension			Mixed Declension		
Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	-er	-es	-e	-e	-e	-e	-er	-es	-e
Acc.	-en			-en			-en		
Gen.	-es		-er	-en			-en		
Dat.	-em								
Plur.:									
N. A.	-e								
Gen.	-er								
Dat.	-en								

62. Adjectives in final or penultimate e drop this e before a case-ending: weise, weis-er; edel, edl-er.

63. Hoch, HIGH, is hoh- before an ending: hoh-er.

64. The neuter Nominative-Accusative ending -es is, at times, omitted.

65. The Genitive ending -es is usually changed for euphony to -en when the noun following has -es.

66. The Nominative-Accusative -en in the plural is usually changed to -e after indefinite pronouns (alle, viele, andere, etc.).

EXAMPLE OF INFLECTION

67. Gut, GOOD

Old Declension

Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	gut-er	gut-es	gut-e
Acc.	gut-en	gut-es	gut-e
Gen.	gut-es	gut-es	gut-er
Dat.	gut-em	gut-es	gut-er
Plur.:			
N. A.	gut-e	gut-e	gut-e
Gen.	gut-er	gut-er	gut-er
Dat.	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en

	New Declension			Mixed Declension		
Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	gut-e	gut-e	gut-e	gut-er	gut-es	gut-e
A.	gut-en	gut-e	gut-e	gut-en	gut-es	gut-e
All other cases	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en

68. Every German adjective is declined according to one of the above models, whatever its form and ending (observing **62-66**).

69. Decline together (observing **36** and **37**): —

Old:	1. gut-er Vater	2. gut-es Haus	3. gut-e Mutter
New:	1. der gut-e Vater	2. das gut-e Haus	3. die gut-e Mutter
Mixed:	1. mein[1] gut-er Vater	2. mein gut-es Haus	3. meine gut-e Mutter

70. The general rules for determining the declension of an adjective are given above (**60**). The details are as follows: —

71. Adjectives follow the Old declension: —

1. When preceded by no determinative.

2. After an indeclinable, such as a numeral (except ein), etc., unless preceded by another declinable determinative.

3. After pronouns exceptionally used without an ending, as manch, solch, viel (**127**).

72. Adjectives follow the New declension after der, dieser, or a pronoun inflected like dieser (jener, welcher, etc.).

NOTES. — 1. Indefinite pronominal adjectives (alle, andere, wenige, etc.) usually require a Nominative or Accusative plural in -e, instead of en (**66**).

2. Solcher, *such*, is after ein treated as an adjective, hence not as the determinative of a following adjective (the determinative being ein).

73. Adjectives follow the Mixed declension: —

1. After ein, kein, and the possessive adjectives mein, dein, etc. — all inflected like ein.

2. Usually after a personal pronoun.

74. Two or more co-ordinated adjectives are, as a rule, all treated according to the preceding principles. Exceptionally (as in poetry) the first may be uninflected; or the second treated as if governed by the first.

EXERCISE XII

---

[1] mein in sing. like ein; in pl. like an adjective of the Old declension.

COMPARISON

75. The Comparative and Superlative are regularly formed by adding -(e)r and -(e)ſt[1] to the positive. E.g. positive reich, comparative reich-er, superlative reich-(e)ſt. But, besides, most monosyllabic adjectives modify the root-vowel (17) in the comparative and the superlative:

alt, OLD	älter, *older*	älteſt, *oldest*
jung, YOUNG	jünger	jüngſt
rot, *red*	röter	röteſt

76. Minor Irregularities: —

hoch, HIGH	höher	höchſt
nahe, NIGH	näher	nächſt
groß, GREAT	größer	größt

77. Irregular Comparison. Gut and viel are compared with the aid of different stems: —

gut, GOOD	beſſer	beſt
viel, *much*	mehr	meiſt

78. A few comparatives (äußer, ober, unter, etc.) have no corresponding positive.

79. An intensified superlative may be formed by prefixing aller (Genitive pl., *of all*) to the ordinary superlative: aller-liebſt, *most dear, very charming.*

80. Inflection. Comparatives and superlatives are inflected like positives: Nominative sing. masc. beſſer-er, neut. beſſer-es, fem. beſſer-e, etc.; der beſt-e, etc.

It is to be observed, however, that when the superlative modifies the verb (i.e. when used adverbially), and not an understood noun, it is treated as an adverb even where English treats it as a predicate adjective, and is then rendered by a superlative Dative phrase: am (an dem) beſten, lit. *at the best*, etc.

---

[1] Considerations of euphony decide whether the e is elided or not; thus after d, t, and sibilants, s, z, ß, etc., it is retained: ſüßeſte, etc.

Der Knabe ist **am besten** in der Schule. *The boy is best (when) at school.*	Der Knabe ist **der beste** in der Schule. *The boy is the best (boy) in school.*
Im Winter sind die Tage **am kürzesten.** *In winter the days are shortest.*	Die Tage im Winter sind **die kürzesten** des Jahres. *The days in winter are the shortest of the year.*

81. In comparisons of equality, so, *as*, is followed by **wie**, or less commonly als: ich bin so alt wie (als) du, *I am as old as you.* After comparatives als and denn, *than*, are both admissible: ich bin älter als er, *I am older than he.*

Adjectives used as Nouns

82. In German, adjectives are more often used substantively than in English. When so used they are capitalized (**15**, 2), but retain their adjective inflection: der Gute, *the good man;* die Guten, *the good people;* die Rechte (Hand), *the right hand.* But some adjectives are generally used in their uninflected forms. Thus, especially, names of languages (except immediately after the definite article) and of colors: er spricht Deutsch (ein reines Deutsch, das heutige Deutsch), *he speaks German (a pure German, modern German);* er kauft Berliner Blau, *he buys Berlin blue;* but er spricht das Deutsche, *he speaks the German.*

Note. — The syllable -er, attached to names of cities or countries, converts them into invariable adjectives, i.e. these adjectives do not change their form to indicate gender, number or case. They even retain their capitals, while derivatives in -isch, from these same proper nouns are written with a small initial letter: Kölner, Pariser, but schweizerisch, berlinisch, etc.

83. After (et)was, *something*, nichts, *nothing*, an adjective is treated like a noun in apposition: etwas Neues, *something new;* nichts Altes, *nothing old* (cf. **127**, 3).

On the use of adjectives as adverbs see **201**.

Exercise XIII

NUMERALS

84. Cardinals. 1. Ein, ONE, when used without determinative before a noun is inflected like the indefinite article: der Mann hat nur ein Auge (*n.*). Otherwise it is inflected like an adjective: einer ist hier; mein einer Bruder; das eine Pferd.

2. Hence, eins (neut. abstractly) in counting.

3. In compound numbers ein is uninflected: einundzwanzig, *twenty-one.*

85. Zwei, TWO, drei, THREE, may for distinctness have the Genitive plur., zweier, dreier, and the Dative plur., zweien, dreien.

86. Other cardinals up to a million are ordinarily uninflected. But, used substantively, they often have the Dative ending -en: mit Sechsen fahren, *drive in a coach and six;* auf allen Vieren gehen, *go on all fours.*

87. Occasionally a plural form in -e (Dative -en) is met with. Hundert and Tausend, when used as plural nouns follow Class II; i.e. they make their Nominatives in -e.

88. Ordinals. Ordinals are formed from their corresponding cardinals by adding -t, or, after neunzehn, *nineteen,* -st to the simple stem: vier-t-, *fourth;* elf-t-, *eleventh;* but zwanzig-st-, *twentieth;* einundzwanzig-st-, *twenty-first.* Eins, *one,* has the ordinal erst-; drei, *three,* dritt-; acht, *eight,* acht-. Cf. the English forms, *first, second,* etc.

89. Ordinal numbers are inflected precisely like any common adjective, the endings being joined to the ordinal stem: er-st-er, zweit-er, der erst-e, die zweit-e, das ein und zwanzig-st-e, etc.

NOTE. — As ordinals are generally used with the definite article, grammars usually give them in that form: der, das, die erste; der ersten, den ersten, etc.

Some Peculiarities of Construction

90. The Time of Day. The English *o'clock* is expressed in German by the invariable Uhr (orig. *hour*, now *clock*, *watch*).

1. Even hours are expressed as in English: drei Uhr, *three o'clock;* zehn Uhr, *ten o'clock.*

2. Half hours are expressed by halb, *half*, followed directly by the number of the *next* full hour: halb drei, "*half three*," i.e. *half past two;* halb zehn, *half past nine.*

3. Quarter hours are expressed by Viertel, sing. or pl., *quarter(s)*, either construed as in English: (ein) Viertel nach (or über) drei, (*a*) *quarter past three*, (ein) Viertel vor drei, (*a*) *quarter of* (*to*) *three;* or by Viertel with the preposition auf, *on*, *towards;* ein Viertel auf vier, *a quarter towards four*, i.e. *quarter past three;* drei Viertel auf drei, *three quarters towards three*, i.e. *quarter of* (*to*) *three.*

4. Minutes are expressed by Minute (pl. -n), *minute(s)*, with a preposition denoting *past* (nach, über) or *before* (vor): zehn Minuten nach (or über) drei, *ten minutes past three;* zehn Minuten vor drei, *ten minutes of* (*to*) *three.*

91. *A hundred*, *a thousand* are simply hundert, tausend; but *a million* is eine Million.

92. *One and a half*, *two and a half*, etc., are usually rendered by a compound consisting of the next full ordinal number with the suffix -halb: anderthalb, 1½; dritthalb, 2½; viert(e)halb, 3½, etc.

Exercise XIV

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

93. The Personal Pronouns and their inflection are as follows: —

	1. Person	2. Person	3. Person Masc.	3. Person Neut.	3. Person Fem.
Sing.:					
N.	ich I	du THOU (*you*, **97**)	er *he*	es IT	sie SHE
A.	mich ME	dich THEE	ihn *him*	es *it*	sie HER
G.	mein(er) of *me*	dein(er) of *thee*	sein(er) of *him, it*		ihrer of *her*
D.	mir (to, for) *me*	dir (to, for) *thee*	ihm (to, for) *him, it*		ihr (to, for) *her*
Plur.:					
N.	wir WE	ihr YOU		sie *they*	
A.	uns US	euch YOU		sie *them*	
G.	unser of *us*	euer of *you*		ihrer of *them*	
D.	uns (to, for) *us*	euch (to, for) *you*		ihnen (to, for) *them*	

94. The full Genitive forms meiner, deiner, seiner, etc., are those commonly used. The shorter mein, dein, etc., are poetic and archaic.

1. Meiner, etc., are changed to meinet, etc., before the prepositions halb(en, -er), wegen, willen, and written with them as one word: meinetwegen, *for my sake, as far as I am concerned;* ihretwegen, *for her (their) sake;* um unseretwillen, *for our sake;* seinethalben, *on his behalf, for all he cares.*

Peculiarities of Use

95. Sie, *they*, and all its inflected forms are used as the pronouns of polite address, both singular and plural. When so used, however, the pronouns must be capitalized: haben sie ihren Vater gesehen? *have they seen their father?* but haben Sie Ihren Vater gesehen? *have you seen your father?*

96. Ihr, *you*, formerly the regular pronoun of polite address, is yet used as such in poetry and dramatic style: habt (2d pl.) ihr das Buch? *have you the book?*

97. Du (and its plural ihr, *you*), is used as a term of intimacy, as ordinarily between members of a family or close friends, and to children. Strictly speaking it is the English *thou*, usually, however, to be rendered by *you*.

Note. — Er, *he*, sie, *she*, are sometimes found in literature used in address by superiors to inferiors, or with a tinge of contempt.

98. 1. Er, sie, es, etc. As lifeless objects are neuter in English, but in German masculine, feminine, or neuter, the English *it* must be rendered by er, sie, or es, according to the gender of the noun referred to: —

Haben Sie den Apfel (die Rose, das Buch)?	*Have you the apple (the rose, the book)?*
Ich habe ihn (sie, es).	*I have it.*

2. The Genitive or Dative or prepositional constructions of er, sie, es are, however, in such relations, usually supplanted by the demonstrative, as will be described under the demonstratives.

99. With reference to a preceding object, der, die, das are often, to avoid ambiguity, supplanted by the demonstrative der, derselbe (cf. **108**).

100. Es, *it*, is often used impersonally, and then the verb agrees in number with a following subject. Thus it is used: —

1. Like the English *it* or *there* with *be*:

Es ist mein Vater.	*It is my father.*
Es sind meine Brüder.	*It is (are) my brothers.*
Es ist nichts darin.	*There is nothing in it.*

Notice Ich bin es, *it is I*, etc.

2. Optionally as a redundant subject (untranslated in English), where the real subject, for emphasis or for some other reason, is placed after the verb and its near adjuncts:

Es liebt uns die Mutter.	*Our mother loves us.*
Es sieht uns nicht die Mutter.	*Our mother does not see us.*
Es lieben (pl.) uns die Kinder.	*The children love us.*

101. Dative of Interest or Ethical Dative. The Dative of a personal pronoun is often used to denote the person concerned: —

1. Very much as in English:

Schreiben Sie mir die Aufgabe.	*Write me the exercise.*

2. Where the English has no such Dative:

Was machen Sie mir da?	*What are you doing there (I should like to know)?*

3. For a possessive pronoun (cf. **55**, 1):

Er nahm mir ('for me') das Buch.	*He took my book*, or *the book from me.*
Er fiel ihr ('for her') um den Hals.	*He fell on (about) her neck.*

Reflexive Pronouns

102. 1. Except for the Dative-Accusative of the 3d person, both singular and plural, German, like English, uses the personal pronoun as a reflexive, but ordinarily without the strengthening *-self* (though, for emphasis, selbst or selber may be placed after the pronoun): —

Ich lobe mich, (or mich selbst), *I praise myself.*

2. For the Dative-Accusative, singular or plural, in all genders, German uses sich (Accusative), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*; (Dative) *to himself*, etc.: —

Er lobt	sich.	*He praises himself.*
Sie lobt		*She praises herself.*
Sie loben		*They praise themselves.*

3. In the plural the reflexive often assumes a reciprocal meaning: wir loben uns, *we praise ourselves* (reflexive) or *we praise one another, each other* (reciprocal). To avoid ambiguity, the reciprocal einander may be substituted for the reflexive: wir loben einander, *we praise each other* (or *one another*).

Exercise XV

Possessive Pronouns

103. The Possessives are: —

mein, MY, MINE
dein, THY, THINE (*your, yours*)
sein, *his, its*
ihr, *her(s)*
unser, OUR(*s*)
euer, YOUR(*s*)
ihr, *theirs*

Inflection: —

1. With a singular noun, declined like the indefinite article ein (**25**); with a plural noun, declined like an adjective of the Old declension (**61**).
2. Without a noun: both in the singular and plural, declined like an adjective.

Examples of Inflection

104. 1. Adjectives (i.e. with a noun): —

Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Nt.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	mein	mein	mein-e	ihr	ihr	ihr-e	unser	unser	uns(e)r-e
A.	mein-en	mein	mein-e	ihr-en	ihr	ihr-e	unser-en	unser	uns(e)r-e
G.	mein-es		mein-er	ihr-es		ihr-er	uns(e)r-es		unser-er
D.	mein-em		mein-er	ihr-em		ihr-er	unser-em		unser-er
Plu.:									
N.A.	mein-e			ihr-e			unser-e		
G.	mein-er			ihr-er			unser-er		
D.	mein-en			ihr-en			unser-en		

2. Independent (i.e. without a noun): —

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Sing.: N.	mein-er	mein-es	mein-e
	ihr-er	ihr-es	ihr-e
	unser-er	unser-es	unser-e

etc. (cf. **67**).

105. Definite Article with Possessives. The independent possessive may take the definite article, especially to particularize the ownership, and is then often extended by the ending -ig: mein-ig-, unsr-ig-, etc. With the article it is inflected like an adjective of the New declension. Thus: —

Sing.:	N. der mein(ig)-e	das mein(ig)-e	die mein(ig)-e
	A. den mein(ig)-en	das mein(ig)-e	die mein(ig)-e
	G. des mein(ig)-en		der mein(ig)-en
	etc.		etc.

106. As predicates only the simple forms are used, and they are then uninflected: der Hut ist mein, *the hat is mine.* If, however, the subject is indefinite, das or es, the inflected form is required: es ist meiner, *it is mine* = any masculine object; es ist meine, *it is mine* = any feminine object, etc.

Peculiarities of Use

107. 1. Where no ambiguity would arise, the English possessive may in German be rendered by the definite article (cf. **27**, 2).

2. The English Possessive is often rendered by a Dative of Interest (cf. **101**, 3).

Exercise XVI

Demonstrative Pronouns

108. The Demonstratives (all independent or adjectives) are: —

der[1] THE, *that* dieser THIS jener *that*, VON derjenige *that one, that* derselbe *the same*	INFLECTION: — der is declined like the definite article; adding, when independent, -en to the Genitive sing. and plural, and the Dative plural. Before a limiting clause, the Genitive plural is derer. dies-, jen- = adjectives of the Old declension. der-jenig-, der-selb- : der- is declined like the definite article; jenig-, selb-, like adjectives of the New declension.

109. Examples of Inflection

Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	der	das	die	dies-er	dies-es	dies-e
A.	den	das	die	dies-en	dies-es	dies-e
G.	dessen (des)[2]		deren (der)	dies-es		dies-er
D.	dem		der	dies-em		

[1] Der, das, die, etc., as a demonstrative, whether used with or without a noun, always takes a strong accent: der Mann' = *the man;* der' Mann = *that man.*

[2] The shorter form occurs chiefly in compounds: deswegen, deshalb, etc., and in elevated diction.

Plural:		All Genders	
N. A.	die		dieſ-e
G.	der-en or der-er		dieſ-er
D.	denen		dieſ-en

Sing.:	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	der-jenig-e	das-jenig-e	die-jenig-e
A.	den-jenig-en	das-jenig-e	die-jenig-e
G.	des-jenig-en		der-jenig-en
D.	dem-jenig-en		der-jenig-en
Plur.:			
N. A.	die-jenig-en		
G.	der-jenig-en		
D.	den-jenig-en		

NOTES. — 1. Nominative-Accusative dieſes is often abbreviated to dies.

2. Des (also written deß) is rarely met with instead of deſſen; and Dero is an archaic Genitive for deſſen, rather deren.

PECULIARITIES OF USE

110. Demonstratives are frequently used — for distinctness or otherwise — where English has a personal or a possessive pronoun. The chief uses are as follows (**111–115**): —

111. Der, derjenige, etc., are the regular antecedents of a relative: —

Der (derjenige), welcher glücklich iſt, iſt reich.	*He who is happy is rich.*

112. Der, derſelbe, etc., frequently supplant a personal or possessive pronoun with reference to a preceding object, especially to avoid ambiguity: —

Der Knabe liebt den Mann, aber derſelbe (or der aber) weiß es nicht.	*The boy loves the man, but he* (= *the man;* er = *the boy*) *does not know it.*
Er ſah den Mann und deſſen Freund.	*He saw the man and his* (ſeinen = *his own*) *friend.*

113. Der, derselbe, etc., supplant a personal or possessive pronoun when a lifeless thing is referred to: —

1. Regularly in the Genitive or Dative for English *of it, to it*: —

Ich gedenke dessen.	*I think of it.*
Ich gedenke seiner.	*I think of him.*

Er gab sein Wort, *He gave his word,*	aber ich traue demselben nicht. *but I do not trust it.*
	aber ich traue ihm nicht. *but I do not trust him.*

2. Sometimes after a preposition, for English *it* with a preposition: —

Er hat das Messer, er kann sich mit demselben (or damit) schneiden.	*He has the knife, he may cut himself with it.*

NOTE. — An English preposition with *it* is more commonly rendered by da, *there*, with the preposition suffixed (da changed to dar when the preposition begins with a vowel): Was sagen Sie dazu or darüber, *what do you say to (about) it?* Was geben Sie dafür, *what do you give for it?* Cf. English *thereto, therefore, thereon*, etc.

3. Often for English *its*: —

Der Baum und dessen Äste.	*The tree and its boughs.*

4. Often for emphasis or euphony: —

Der muß ein Held sein.	*He must be a hero.*
Es ist seine Schwester; kennen Sie dieselbe?	*It is his sister; do you know her?*

114. Dies (dieses), das, are used impersonally for English *this, that, these, those*, with the verb *to be*, which must then agree in number with the following noun: —

Dies ist eine Rose und das eine Lilie.	*This is a rose and that a lily.*
Das sind Bücher.	*Those are books.*

115. Dieser may be used for the English *the latter*, and jener for *the former*.

The English *one*, in *this one*, etc., is not rendered in German.

EXERCISE XVII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

116. The Interrogatives are: —

Independent

wer, WHO?

was, WHAT?

Independent or **Adjective**

welcher, *which, what?*

INFLECTION: —

wer, was, declined like the demonstrative der and das (in sing.; no plural), though was has no Dative.

welcher, declined like dieser (**108**).

Hence: —

Sing.:	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	wer		was	welch-er	welch-es	welch-e
A.	wen		was	welch-en	welch-es	welch-e
G.	wessen,[1]			welch-es		welch-er
D.	wem			welch-em		welch-er
Plur.:						
N., etc.	lacking			welch-e, etc.		

NOTE. — Welch is used uninflected in exclamation for *what:* Welch eine schöne Blume! *what a fine flower!*

PECULIARITIES OF USE

117. In prepositional constructions, the adverbial wo(r)-, *where-*, with the required preposition appended, usually supplies the Accusative and the lacking Dative of was: wo-durch, wor-in, wo-mit, *through what, in what, with what* (cf. *wherein, wherewith*, etc.).

---

[1] Ordinarily the shorter form wes only is used for the neuter Genitive. It occurs chiefly in compounds: weswegen, *for what reason;* weshalb, *why;* etc. (Cf. **109**). Occasionally the shorter form is also used for the masculine: Wes Brot ich ess', des Lied ich sing', *whose bread I eat, his praise I sing.*

118. Weſſen, *whose*, is rarely used except of persons.

119. 1. Was für ein? (lit. *what for a?*), *what kind of a? what?* is an interrogative phrase used as an adjective, ein being inflected alone like the numeral ein, and the following noun being treated as after any other adjective: —

Was für ein Haus iſt das?	*What (kind of a) house is that?*
Was für einen Hut haben Sie?	*What (kind of a) hat have you?*

2. Before a plural noun, and usually before an abstract or collective noun, or a noun of material in the singular, was für is used without ein: —

Was für Leute ſind das?	*What (kind of) people are those?*
Was für Unſinn iſt das?	*What nonsense is that?*

Relative Pronouns

120. The Relatives are: —

Independent der, *who, which, that* wer, (*he*) WHO, *whoever* was, WHAT, *that which* **Independent** or **Adjective** welcher, *who, which, that*	INFLECTION: — der, declined like the demonstrative der (Genitive plural only der-en, not der-er). wer, was, welcher, declined like the interrogative wer, was, welcher (though welcher is not used in Genitive sing. and plural).[1]

121. Der and welcher, the ordinary relatives following an antecedent, are used rather indifferently, except that in the Genitive and with reference to a personal pronoun, only

[1] These lacking forms are supplied from the corresponding cases of the demonstrative pronoun der (cf. **109**).

der occurs. In the latter case, if the pronoun is of the first or second person, it is usually repeated after the relative, and the verb made to correspond. Thus: —

Der Mann den (or welchen) ich sah.	*The man whom I saw.*
Der Mann dessen (not welches) Haus ich sah.	*The man whose house I saw.*
Du, der (not welcher) mein Freund ist; or, more commonly: Du, der du mein Freund bist.	*You, who are my friend.*

122. Wer, was are in sense compounded or indefinite relatives, including the antecedent, and cannot be used where a definite antecedent has been expressed.

Peculiarities of Use

123. A prepositional Accusative or Dative of a relative not referring to a person is usually supplanted by wo(r)-, rarely by da(r)-, with the preposition affixed: —

Das Haus wovon ich spreche.	*The house (whereof) of which I speak.*

124. Was, preceded by a neuter adjective or pronoun used in a general sense, is equivalent to English *that*, expressed or understood: —

Das Beste was ich habe.	*The best (that) I have.*
Das ist alles was ich habe.	*That is all (that) I have.*
Das erste was ich hörte.	*The first (that) I heard.*

125. The relative is never omitted in German, as often in English: die Freunde die ich liebe, *the friends I love;* and cf. examples above.

Exercise XVIII

Indefinite Pronouns

126. The Indefinite pronouns are: —

1. Independent

man, *one, people* etwas, *something* nichts, *nothing*	Uninflected
jemand, *some one* niemand, *no one* jedermann, *every one*	Singulars. Inflected like nouns of Class I, *a* (jemand, niemand; sometimes Dative, -em, -en, Accusative, -en).

2. Independent or Adjectives

jeder, *each, every* jeglicher, *each, every*	sing.	Inflected like dieser (observing **127**).
aller, ALL mancher, MANY solcher, SUCH einiger, *some*	sing. and plural	
etliche, *some* mehrere, *several*	plural	
viel, *much*, pl. *many* wenig, *little, few*		Inflected like adjectives (observing **127**).
irgend ein, *any one, whatever* kein, *no one, none*		Inflected (ein, kein): as independent like dieser; as adjective like the indef. article.

127. 1. For aller, mancher, solcher, viel, wenig, the invariable all, manch, solch, viel, are often used, viz.: all in the singular before der (das, die) or a pronominal adjective; manch, solch, before an adjective or ein; viel, wenig, without a determinative, when collective in sense.

2. Jed-, jeglich-, solch-, are after ein inflected as adjectives: ein jeder, eine jegliche, etc.

3. Etwas (sometimes abbreviated to was) and nichts are often used before nouns, in apposition: etwas Neues, *something new.*

4. Ein wenig, *a little*, is an invariable phrase: ein wenig Milch (*f.*), *a little milk.*

PECULIARITIES OF USE

128. Man (the same word as Mann, MAN) is the indefinite personal subject, variously rendered in English (*one*, *they*, *people*, *we*, or *it* with a passive). Its oblique cases are supplied from the corresponding cases of einer: —

Man sagt.	*One says (people say; they say; it is said).*
Wenn man arbeitet, thut es einem gut.	*When one works, it does one (him) good.*

129. All in the plural sometimes means *every:* alle vier Wochen, *every four weeks.*

130. *Not any* is always rendered by kein.

EXERCISE XIX

VERBS

131. There is much more similarity in the conjugation of German and English verbs than in the inflection of their nouns, etc. But there are also some important discrepancies. Both will be pointed out in their general features below.

132. Similarities. German and English verbs alike have: —

1. Two simple personal tenses of parallel formation in both languages, the Present and the Preterit, other tense-relations being expressed by the aid of auxiliaries.

2. Two numbers, Singular and Plural, each with three persons.

3. Three modes: Indicative, Subjunctive (much more common in German than English), and Imperative.

4. Two voices, Active and Passive, the latter, however, being made in both languages by the aid of an auxiliary, in English *be*, in German werden, *become*.

5. Three impersonal or nominal forms: Infinitive, Present Participle, and Past Participle.

6. Two modes of conjugation, in much quite alike, the New (or Regular, comprising the vast plurality of verbs), and the Old (or Irregular).

133. Discrepancies. The main discrepancies between German and English consist in a partial difference of endings, in the use in part of different auxiliaries, and in a different treatment of most of the verbal prefixes (these being frequently separated from the verb in German).

134. The verbs will be described below under the general headings Simple Verbs (New or Old), Compound Verbs (verbs with separable or inseparable prefixes), and Verb Phrases (with various auxiliaries).

Simple Verbs

135. Conjugations. There are two conjugations, distinguishable, like English conjugations, by the different formation of the Preterit Indicative, viz.: —

1. The **New**[1] (or Regular, of comparatively recent formation), adding (e)te (= Eng. *-ed*) to the unchanged root in the Preterit: lieb-en, *lov-e*, Preterit, lieb-te, *lov-ed*.

2. The **Old**[1] (or Irregular, of more primitive formation), having the changed root (**18**) alone for its Preterit: fall-en, *fall*, Preterit, fiel, *fell*.

Note. — There are other discrepancies between the two conjugations. These will be described with each below. A small residue of verbs conforming to neither are described as Anomalous (**138**).

---

[1] The *New* and *Old* are also called the *Weak* and *Strong*.

136. Principal Parts. These are the same as in English: Infinitive (from which Presents), Preterit Indicative (from which Preterits) and Past Participle.

THE NEW (OR REGULAR) CONJUGATION

137. Characteristic. Preterit in -(e)te, Past Participle in -(e)t. No change of the root-vowel.

Lieben, *to* LOVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT IND.	PAST PART.
lieb-en,	lieb-te,	ge-lieb-t,[1]
(*to*) LOVE	LOVED	LOV-ED

DERIVED PARTS

	PRESENT		PRETERIT	
Sing.	**Indic.**	**Subj.**	**Indic. and Subj.**	
1. ich	lieb-e	lieb-e	lieb-te	Used in
I	*love*[2]	*I (may) love*[3]	*I loved (might love)*	Past
2. du	lieb-st	lieb-est	lieb-test	and
3. er	lieb-t	lieb-e	lieb-te	Passive
Plur.				Verb
1. wir	lieb-en	lieb-en	lieb-ten	Phrases.
2. ihr	lieb-t	lieb-et	lieb-tet	
3. sie	lieb-en	lieb-en	lieb-ten	

	Imperative	Participle
Sing. 2.	lieb-e *love*	lieb-end *loving*
Plur. 2.	lieb-(e)t *love*	

---

[1] ge- = *y-*, in Old English *y-clept*, etc. — [2] German has but one form, liebe, to represent the English *love, am loving, do love*. Corresponding forms of other tenses are similarly rendered by a single German form. — [3] The Subjunctive is variously rendered. Cf. **182**.

1. Where euphony requires, e is inserted before t, ſ: red-en, *speak*, red-e-te, ge-red-e-t. Pres. Ind. red-e, red-e-ſt, red-e-t, etc. As a rule, it is thus inserted after -d, -t; after a nasal preceded by a mute; also after a sibilant before ſ: regn-e-t, atm-e-ſt, ſchließ-e-ſt.

2. Derivative verbs in -el-n, -er-n usually drop the e of -el-, -er- before the personal ending e: wandel-n, *change*, wandel-te, ge-wandel-t. Pres. Ind. wandl-e, wandel-ſt, wandel-t; wandel-n, etc.; Subj. wandl-e, etc. (wandl- throughout).

3. Verbs that do not accent the initial syllable (i.e. derivatives in -ieren, and verbs with inseparable prefixes, **162**) have no ge- in the Past Participle: ſtudier'-en, *study*, ſtudier-te, ſtudier-t.

4. In the Imperative, du, ihr are used with the verb only exceptionally. The lacking persons are supplied by the use of the Subjunctive with the Personal pronoun added: Lieben Sie, *love (you)*. Gehen wir, *let us go*.

5. The Imperative ending e- is sometimes omitted: lieb' or lieb.

EXERCISE XX

---

138. Anomalous Verbs. Some verbs, which may be classed with the New conjugation, forming, as they do, their Preterits in -te, and, generally, the Past Participle in -t, show various irregularities, especially a change of the root-vowel in certain forms. In the anomalous verbs given below (**139–141**) these irregular forms are marked by heavy type.

139. Haben, with irregular Present Ind. (2d, 3d sing.) and Preterit: —

PRINCIPAL PARTS

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT IND.	PAST PART.
hab-en,	hat-te,	ge-hab-t,
(*to*) *have*	*had*	*had*

DERIVED PARTS

	PRESENT		PRETERIT		
Sing.	**Indic.**	**Subj.**	**Indic.**	**Subj.**	
1. ich	hab-e	hab-e	hat-te	hät-te	Used
2. du	ha-st	hab-est	hat-test	hät-test	in Past
3. er	ha-t	hab-e	hat-te	hät-te	Verb
Plur.					Phrases.
1. wir	hab-en	hab-en	hat-ten	hät-ten	
2. ihr	hab-(e)t	hab-et	hat-tet	hät-tet	
3. sie	hab-en	hab-en	hat-ten	hät-ten	
	Imperative	**Participle**			
Sing. 2.	hab-e	hab-end			
Plur. 2.	hab-(e)t				

NOTE. — Compounds of haben (hand-haben, etc.) are regular.

140. Verbs with radical -enn-, -end-, change e to a in the Preterit Ind. and Past Part.: —

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PART.
brenn-en, *burn*	Ind. brann-te Subj. brenn-te	ge-brannt

So also kennen, *know, be acquainted with;* nennen, *name;* rennen, *run;* senden (also regular), *send;* wenden (also regular), *turn* (cf. Eng. *wend*).

141. Verbs with radical -ng-, -nk-, change the root-vowel, and also the g, k, to ch: —

bring-en, *bring*	brach-te Subj. bräch-te	ge-brach-t
denken, *think*	dach-te Subj. däch-te	ge-dach-t
dünk-en, *seem* (Dat.)	däuch-te	ge-däuch-t

NOTE. — Dünken (usually impersonal, with the Accusative) may also be regular. The Infinitive is sometimes däuchten, and Present Indicative es däucht.

142. Sollen, wollen, müssen, mögen, dürfen, können (called modal auxiliaries) and wissen all have an irregular monosyllabic Present Indicative singular (originally a Preterit); all, except sollen and wollen, change the vowel in the Preterit; and all, except wissen, having two Past Participles, one regular, and one (used after an Infinitive) in form identical with the Infinitive. In the following list all forms not given are regular, though the Imperative hardly occurs, except of wollen: —

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PART.
soll-en, *be obliged*, SHALL	soll-te	ge-soll-t or soll-en
Present Ind., 1. soll, 2. soll-st, 3. soll; 1. soll-en, etc.		
woll-en, *be willing*, WILL	woll-te	ge-woll-t or woll-en
Present Ind., 1. will, 2. will-st, 3. will; 1. woll-en, etc.		
müss-en, *be compelled, have to*; MUST	muß-te Subj. müß-te	ge-muß-t or müss-en
Present Ind., 1. muß, 2. muß-t, 3. muß; 1. müss-en, etc.		
mög-en, *like*, MAY	moch-te Subj. möch-te	ge-moch-t or mög-en
Present Ind., 1. mag, 2. mag-st, 3. mag; 1. mög-en, etc.		
dürf-en, *be allowed, may*	durf-te Subj. dürf-te	ge-durf-t or dürf-en
Present Ind., 1. darf, 2. darf-st, 3. darf; 1. dürf-en, etc.		
könn-en, *be able*, CAN	konn-te Subj. könn-te	ge-konn-t or könn-en
Present. Ind., 1. kann, 2. kann-st, 3. kann; 1. könn-en, etc.		
wiss-en, *know*	wuß-te Subj. wüß-te	ge-wuß-t
Present Ind., 1. weiß, 2. weiß-t, 3. weiß; 1. wiss-en, etc.		

143. Thun, besides changing the vowel, has the Preterit in -t and the Past Participle in -n: —

thu-n, DO tha-t, *did* ge-tha-n, *done*

Present Ind. thu-e, thu-st, thu-t; thu-n, thu-t, thu-n; Imperative thu-e, thu-t. Preterit Ind. tha-t, that-st, tha-t; that-en, etc.; Subjunctive thät-e.

144. A few verbs make the Past Participle in -en: mahlen, *grind* (cf. MILL), always; salzen, SALT, and spalten, SPLIT, occasionally.

EXERCISE XXI

THE OLD (OR IRREGULAR) CONJUGATION

145. General Characteristic. The Preterit is simply the root with changed vowel. The Past Participle ends in -en, with or without change of the root-vowel: —

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT INDIC.	PAST PART.
fall-en, FALL	fiel	ge-fall-en
brech-en, BREAK	brach	ge-broch-en

146. Less General Changes. Aside from this general characteristic, the following changes also are to be observed: —

1. In the 2d and 3d Present Indicative singular, a radical a (except of schaffen, schallen) is modified to ä; and e usually to ie when long, or i when short: 1. falle, 2. fällst, 3. fällt; 1. sehe, 2. siehst, 3. sieht; 1. breche, 2. brichst, 3. bricht.

2. Verbs that modify e to ie, i, in the Present Indicative, do the same in the Imperative, and drop the ending -e, thus: sieh! brich!

NOTE. — The -e of the Imperative is frequently dropped in other verbs also; so ordinarily komm, laß.

3. The Preterit Subjunctive is invariably formed from the Preterit Indicative by adding -e and modifying a deep root-vowel (a, o, u, au to ä, ö, ü, äu, 17): Preterit Indicative brach, Subjunctive bräch-e.

NOTE. — More sporadic changes may best be learned in studying each separate verb.

OLD CONJUGATION

Fallen, *to* FALL

147.

PRINCIPAL PARTS		
INFINITIVE	PRETERIT IND.	PAST PART.
fall-en,	fiel,	ge-fall-en,
(*to*) FALL	FELL	FALLEN

DERIVED PARTS

	PRESENT		PRETERIT		
Sing.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	
1. ich	fall-e	fall-e	fiel	fiel-e	Used in Past
I	*fall*	(*may*) *fall*	*fell*	*might fall*	and Passive
2. du	fäll-st (146, 1)	fall-est	fiel-st	fiel-est	Verb
3. er	fäll-t	fall-e	fiel	fiel-e	Phrases.
Plur.					
1. wir	fall-en	fall-en	fiel-en	fiel-en	
2. ihr	fall-t	fall-et	fiel-t	fiel-et	
3. sie	fall-en	fall-en	fiel-en	fiel-en	

	Imperative	Participle
Sing. 2.	fall-e	fall-end
	fall	*falling*
Plur. 2.	fall-(e)t	

148. Classes of Old Verbs. The Old verbs — not far from 200 in number, counting only simple verbs — are here separated into three divisions with reference to the extent of the root-change; and these into seven classes with reference to the nature of the root-change, the verbs within each class being conjugated (with few exceptions) according to one model. Thus: —

Division	Class	ROOT-VOWEL Preterit	Past Part.
A. Change in the Preterit alone	I	ie(i)	
	II	u	
	III	a	
B. Same change in Preterit and Past Part.	IV	o	o
	V	i(e)	i(e)
C. Different change in Preterit and Past Part.	VI	a	o
	VII	a	u

149. The verbs of these divisions and classes are given below. For each class the principal parts of one key-verb, selected with special reference to its near agreement in forms with the English cognate, are given. In conjugating the whole verb, the rules for vowel-modification in the Present Indicative and Preterit Subjunctive (**146**, 3) should be remembered. Irregularities will be indicated as they occur.

Several Old verbs may follow the New conjugation as well, especially in certain senses or in certain forms. In order not to thrust this subject on the student's attention while he is learning the Old verbs as such, it is relegated to **159**.

Verbs with Vowel-Change in the Preterit alone

150. Class I. Preterit root-vowel ie (i before -ng). Key-verb: fallen. Principal parts: —

fall-en, FALL **fiel**, FELL ge-fall-en, FALLEN

Pres. Indic.: falle, fällst, fällt; fallen, etc.; Imper. fall(e) (**146**, 1).

Here belong chiefly verbs with radical a: —

fallen, FALL	fangen, *catch*, Pret. fing
halten,[1] HOLD	hangen, HANG, Pret. hing
lassen, LET, *cause to*	
blasen, *blow*, BLARE	stoßen, *push, thrust*
braten,[1] *broil*	rufen, *call*
raten,[1] *advise*	heißen, *be called*; *call, bid*
schlafen, SLEEP	laufen, *run*, LEAP

[1] 3d Pres. Indic.: hält, brät, etc.

Anomalous: —

gehen,[1] GO **ging**, *went* gegangen, GONE

Pres. Indic.: gehe, gehst, geht; gehen, etc.; Imper.: geh(e).

hauen, *cut*, HEW **hieb**, HEWED gehauen, HEWN

Pres. Indic.: haue, hauſt, haut; hauen, etc.; Imper.: hau(e).

EXERCISE XXII.

---

151. Class II. Preterit root-vowel u. Key-verb: ſchlagen. Principal parts: —

ſchlag-en, *strike*, SLAY **ſchlug**, SLEW ge-ſchlag-en, SLAIN

Pres. Indic.: ſchlage, ſchlägſt, ſchlägt; ſchlagen, etc.; Imper.: ſchlag(e).

Here belong only verbs with radical a: —

ſchlagen, *strike, fight*, SLAY
tragen, *carry* (cf. DRAG)
graben, *dig* (cf. GRAVE)
laden,[2] *invite*, LOAD
fahren, *drive* (cf. FARE)
wachſen, *grow*, WAX
waſchen, WASH

Anomalous:

backen, BAKE, Pret. buk
ſchaffen,[3] *create* (cf. SHAPE), Pret. ſchuf

152. Class III. Preterit root-vowel a. Key-verb: geben. Principal parts: —

ge-ben, GIVE **gab**, GAVE ge-geb-en, GIVEN

Pres. Indic.: gebe, giebſt, giebt; geben, etc.; Imper.: gieb (**146, 2**).

Here belong chiefly verbs with radical e: —

geben, GIVE
ge-neſen, *recover*
leſen, *read*
ſehen, SEE
ge-ſchehen (impers.), *happen*
treten,[4] *step*, TREAD
freſſen,[5] *eat* (like an animal) (cf. FRET)
meſſen, MEASURE, METE
ver-geſſen, FORGET

---

[1] Old form gangan.

[2] Vowel-modification in the Present is rare. When it occurs the 3d person is lädt; cf. **137, 1.** [3] No vowel-modification in the Present.

[4] Present Indic. trete, trittſt, tritt; treten, etc. Imperative tritt. [5] Vowel modified to i in the Present Indicative and Imperative (**146, 2**).

Anomalous: —

bitten, *beg*	bat	gebeten
eſſen, EAT	aß	gegeſſen
kommen, COME	kam	gekommen
liegen, LIE	lag	gelegen
ſitzen, SIT	ſaß	geſeſſen
ſtehen,[1] STAND	ſtand or ſtund	geſtanden

Pres. Indic.: ſtehe, ſtehſt, ſteht; ſtehen, etc.; Imper.: ſteh(e).

EXERCISE XXIII.

Verbs with the same Vowel-Change in Preterit and Past Participle

153. Class IV. Preterit and Participle root-vowel o. Key-verb: frieren. Principal parts: —

frier-en, FREEZE fror, FROZE ge-fror-en, FROZEN

Here belong verbs with various root-vowels, chiefly ie (e): —

frieren, FREEZE	kieſen, or, more commonly,
verlieren, LOSE	küren, CHOOSE
klieben, *split*, CLEAVE	fließen,[3] FLOW
ſchieben, SHOVE	genießen,[3] *enjoy, partake*
ſtieben, *scatter*	gießen,[3] *pour* (cf. GUSH)
kriechen,[2] *crawl*, CROUCH	ſchießen,[3] SHOOT
riechen, *smell* (cf. REEK)	ſchließen,[3] *close, lock*
biegen,[2] *bend* (cf. BOUGH)	ſprießen,[3] SPROUT
fliegen,[2] FLY	verdrießen,[3] *vex*
wiegen (intrans.), WEIGH	bieten,[2] *offer*, BID
fliehen, FLEE	

---

[1] No vowel-modification in the Present Indicative and Imperative.

[2] In the 2d and 3d person Present Indicative sing. and Imperative, the diphthong eu is exceptionally used in archaic forms; e.g. kreucht for kriecht; fleucht for fliegt, etc.

[3] After the short o of the Preterit and Past Participle ß (11, ß) becomes ſſ.

lügen, LIE
trügen, *deceive*
saugen,[1] SUCK
schnauben,[1] *snort*, SNUFFLE
schrauben,[1] SCREW
glimmen, GLIMMER
klimmen, CLIMB
heben,[1] HEAVE
weben,[1] WEAVE
fechten, FIGHT
flechten, *braid, twine*
bewegen,[1] *induce, move*
pflegen,[1] *cherish, nurse, wait* on, *be wont*
melken, MILK
quellen, *well up*
schwellen, SWELL
schmelzen, SMELT, MELT
scheren, SHEAR
dreschen, THRESH
gä(h)ren, *ferment* (cf. YEAST)
schwären,[2] *suppurate*
wägen, (trans.), WEIGH
schwören, SWEAR
er-löschen,[3] *go out, be extinguished*
schallen, *sound, resound*

Anomalous: —

saufen, *drink* (like an animal)	soff	gesoffen
sieden, *boil*, SEETHE	sott	gesotten
triefen, DRIP	troff	getroffen
ziehen, *pull* (cf. TUG)	zog	gezogen

154. Class V. Preterit and Participle root-vowel **i** or **ie** (= ī). Key verbs: **beißen, greifen, bleiben.**

Principal parts. Preterit and Participle root-vowel **i**: —

beiß-en, BITE	**biß**, BIT	**ge-biss-en**, BITTEN

Same root-vowel, with the following consonant doubled:

greif-en, *grasp*	**griff**	**ge-griff-en**

Preterit and Participle root-vowel **ie**: —

bleib-en, *remain*	**blieb**	**ge-blieb-en**

Here belong only verbs with radical **ei**: —

beißen, BITE
(sich) be-fleißen, *be diligent*
reißen, *tear*
schleißen, SLIT
schmeißen, *throw*, (cf. SMITE)
spleißen, SPLIT
er-bleichen, *grow pale* (cf. BLEACH)
gleichen, *resemble* (cf. LIKEN)
schleichen, SLINK
streichen, STROKE
weichen, *yield* (cf. WEAKEN)

---

[1] No vowel-modification in the Present. [2] Vowel modified to **ie** in the Present Indicative and Imperative: schwiert, schwier, etc. [3] Vowel modified to **i** in the Present Indicative and Imperative: erlischt.

greifen, *grasp*, GRIPE
keifen, *chide*
kneifen, *pinch*
pfeifen, *whistle*, PIPE
schleifen, *whet*
gleiten, GLIDE
reiten, RIDE
schreiten, *step*
streiten, *quarrel*

Anomalous:

leiden, *suffer* (cf. LOATHE); **Pret. litt**
schneiden, *cut;* Pret. schnitt

b-leiben, *remain* (cf. LEAVE)
reiben, RUB
schreiben, *write* (cf. SCRIBE)
treiben, DRIVE
meiden, *shun*
scheiden, *divorce, separate*
schweigen, *keep silent*
steigen, *ascend*
ge-deihen, *prosper*
leihen, LEND
zeihen, *accuse*
scheinen, SHINE, *appear*
preisen, PRAISE
weisen, *show*
schreien, SCREAM
speien, SPIT

EXERCISE XXIV

Verbs with different Vowel-Change in Preterit and Past Participle

155. Class VI. Root-vowel in Preterit a, in Participle o. Key-verb: brechen. Principal parts: —

brech-en, BREAK brach, BROKE (obs., BRAKE)
ge-broch-en, BROKEN

Pres. Indic.: breche, brichst, bricht; brechen, etc.; Imper. brich (**146, 2**).

Here belong chiefly verbs with short radical e, a few with long, or with short i: —

brechen, BREAK
sprechen, SPEAK
stechen, STICK
er-schrecken, *be frightened*
gelten, *be worth, pass for* (cf. YIELD)
schelten, SCOLD
helfen, HELP
sterben, *die* (cf. STARVE)
ver-derben, *spoil*
werben, *woo*
werfen, *throw* (cf. WARP)
bergen, *hide* (cf. BURY)
dreschen, THRESH
bersten, BURST

ſtehlen,[1] STEAL
be-fehlen,[1] *command*
ge-bären, BEAR, *give* BIRTH *to*
be-ginnen, BEGIN
rinnen, *flow*, RUN
ſinnen, *meditate*
ſpinnen, SPIN
ge-winnen, WIN
ſchwimmen, SWIM

Anomalous:

nehmen, *take;* Participle genommen; Pres. Indic. 2d nimmſt, 3d nimmt; Imper. nimm
treffen, *hit;* Preterit traf
werden, see below

156. Werden, *become;* Future or Passive auxiliary *shall, will, be* (cf. WORTH in *woe worth*) is conjugated as follows. Principal parts: —

werd-en — ward or wurd-e — ge-word-en

	Present		Preterit	Past Part.
Sing.	Indic.	Subj.	Indicative	
1. ich	werd-e	werd-e	ward or wurd-e	ge-word-en, used when Independent;
2. du	wir-ſt	werd-eſt	ward-ſt " wurd-eſt	
3. er	wird	werd-e	ward " wurd-e	
Plur.				
1. wir	werd-en	werd-en	wurd-en	word-en, in Passive Voice.
2. ihr	werd-et	werd-et	wurd-et	
3. ſie	werd-en	werd-en	wurd-en	
	Imperative	Participle	Subjunctive	
Sing. 2.	werd-e	werd-end	würd-e	
Plur. 2.	werd-et		etc., regular	

Exercise XXV

---

157. Class VII. Root-vowel in Preterit a, in Participle u. Key-verb: ſingen. Principal parts: —

ſing-en, SING — ſang, SANG — ge-ſung-en, SUNG

Pres. Indic.: ſinge, ſingſt, ſingt; ſingen, etc.; Imper.: ſing(e).

Here belong all verbs with radical ing, ind, ink: —

---

[1] Verbs with long radical e modify it to ie in the Present Indicative (**146, 2**): ſtehle, ſtiehlſt, ſtiehlt, etc.

ſingen, SING	binden, BIND
dingen,[1] *hire*	finden, FIND
dringen, *press* (cf. THRONG)	ſchinden,[1] *flay*, SKIN
ge-lingen (impers.), *succeed*	ſchwinden, *vanish* (cf. SWOON)
klingen, *sound* (cf. CLINK)	winden, WIND
ringen, *wrestle* (cf. WRING)	
ſchlingen, SLING	
ſchwingen, SWING	ſinken, SINK
ſpringen, *leap*, SPRING	ſtinken, STINK
zwingen, *compel*, (cf. TWINGE)	trinken, DRINK

EXERCISE XXVI

158. Sein, *be*. This verb, though of the Old conjugation, does not come under any of the preceding classes, its forms being made — like those of *be* in English — from different roots, viz. (i)ſ-, weſ-, bi-.

Principal parts: ſei-n, war, ge-weſ-en.

	Present		Preterit		Past Part.
Sing.	**Indic.**	**Subj.**	**Indic.**	**Subj.**	
1. ich	bi-n	ſei	war	wär-e	Used in Past
I	*am*	(*may*) *be*	*was*	*were*	Verb
2. du	bi-ſt	ſei-eſt	war-ſt	wär-eſt	Phrases
3. er	iſ-t	ſei	war	wär-e	with ſein.
Plur.					
1. wir	ſi-nd	ſei-en	war-en	wär-en	
2. ihr	ſei-d	ſei-et	war-et	wär-et	
3. ſie	ſi-nd	ſei-en	war-en	wär-en	

	Imperative	Participle
Sing. 2.	ſei, *be*	ſei-end, *being*
Plur. 2.	ſei-d	

EXERCISES XXVII, XXVIII

[1] Irregular u is required in the Preterit.

REFERENCE LIST

OF ALL

SIMPLE VERBS DEVIATING FROM THE NEW OR REGULAR CONJUGATION

159. An asterisk (*) denotes that the verb is usually regular (New conjugation) in the sense to which the asterisk is attached; or that a regular form may be found used instead of the irregular to which the asterisk is attached.

I., II., etc., denote the class of the Old verbs (cf. **148**). Where such a numeral is lacking, the verb is an anomalous verb of the New conjugation (**138**).

(ä), (i), etc., placed after the Infinitive or Preterit, denote the vowel-modification in the Present (Indicative or Imperative) and in the Preterit Subjunctive, according to **146**.

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	**Preterit Ind.** (S.)	**Past Part.**
backen II. (ä), BAKE	buk (ü)* tr.	gebacken
-bären, only in gebären (which see)		
be-fehlen VI. (ie), *command*	befahl (ä or ö)	befohlen
beginnen VI., BEGIN	begann (ä or ö)	begonnen
be-fleißen V., *apply*	beflis	beflissen
be-wegen IV., *induce**; *move*	bewog (ö)	bewogen
beißen V., BITE	biß	gebissen
bergen VI. (i), *hide*	barg (ä or ü)	geborgen
bersten VI. (*i), BURST	*barst (ä), borst (ö)	*geborsten
biegen IV., *bend*, BOW, etc.	bog (ö)	gebogen
bieten IV. (arch. eu), BID	bot (ö)	geboten
binden VII., BIND	band (ä)	gebunden
bitten III., *beg*	bat (ä)	gebeten
blasen I. (ä), *blow*, BLARE	blies	geblasen
bleiben V., *remain*	blieb	geblieben

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	**Preterit Ind.** (S.)	**Past Part.**
bleichen V., BLEACH (*tr.)	*blich	*geblichen
braten I. (a or ä), *broil*	briet (*tr.)	gebraten
brechen VI. (i), BREAK	brach (ä)	gebrochen
brennen, BURN	brannte (e)	gebrannt
bringen, BRING	brachte (ä)	gebracht
=deihen, only in gedeihen (which see)		
denken, THINK	dachte (ä)	gedacht
=derben, only in verderben (which see)		
dingen VII., *bargain, hire*	*dung (ü)	*gedungen
dreschen IV. or VI. (*i), THRESH	*drosch (ö), drasch (ä)	gedroschen
=dreißen, only in verdrießen (which see)		
dringen VII., *press*, THRONG	drang (ä)	gedrungen
dünken, *seem*	deuchte	gedeucht
dürfen (Pres. darf, darfst, darf; dürfen, etc.), *be allowed*	durfte (ü)	gedurft or dürfen
essen III. (i), EAT	aß (ä)	gegessen
fahren II. (ä), *go, drive*, FARE	fuhr (ü)	gefahren
fallen I. (ä), FALL	fiel	gefallen
falten, FOLD	faltete	gefalten
fangen I. (ä), *catch;* cf. FANG	fing	gefangen
fechten IV. (*i), FIGHT	focht (ö)	gefochten
=fehlen, only in befehlen (which see)	and empfehlen	
finden VII., FIND	fand (ä)	gefunden
flechten IV. (*i), *braid*	flocht (ö)	geflochten
=fleißen, obsolete except in befleißen (which see)		
fliegen IV. (arch. eu), FLY	flog (ö)	geflogen
fliehen IV. (arch. euch), FLEE	floh (ö)	geflohen
fließen IV, (arch. eu), FLOW	floß (ö)	geflossen
fragen (rarely ä), *ask*	fragte, rarely frug (ü)	gefragt
fressen III. (i), *eat;* cf. FRET	fraß (ä)	gefressen
frieren, IV., FREEZE	fror (ö)	gefroren
gären IV., *ferment*	gor (ö)	gegoren
ge=bären VI. (*ie), BEAR, give BIRTH	gebar (ä)	geboren
geben III. (ie), GIVE	gab (ä)	gegeben
ge=deihen V., *thrive*	gedieh	gediehen
gehen I., GO	ging	gegangen
ge=lingen VII., *succeed*	gelang	gelungen
gelten VI. (i), *be worth*	galt (ä or ö)	gegolten
ge=nesen III. *grow well, recover*	genas (ä)	genesen
ge=nießen IV. (arch. eu), *enjoy*	genoß (ö)	genossen

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	Preterit Ind. (S.)	Past Part.
ge-ſchehen III. (ie), *happen*	geſchah (ä)	geſchehen
-geſſen, only in vergeſſen (which see)		
ge-winnen VI., WIN	gewann (ä or ö)	gewonnen
gießen IV. (arch. eu), *pour*, GUSH	goß	gegoſſen
-ginnen, only in beginnen (which see)		
gleichen V., *resemble, be* LIKE	*glich	*geglichen
gleiten V., GLIDE	*glitt	*geglitten
be-gleiten, *accompany* (always regular)		
glimmen IV., GLEAM	*glomm (ö)	*geglommen
graben II. (ä), *dig*, GRAVE	grub (ü)	gegraben
greifen V., *seize, grasp*, GRIPE	griff	gegriffen
haben (Pr. 2d haſt, 3d hat), HAVE	hatte	gehabt
halten I. (ä), HOLD	hielt	gehalten
hangen I. (*ä), HANG	hing	gehangen
hauen I., HEW, **cut up*	*hieb	*gehauen
heben IV., *raise*, HEAVE	hob (ö), hub (ü)	gehoben
heißen I., *bid; call; be called;* cf. HIGHT	hieß	geheißen
helfen VI. (i), HELP	half (ä or ü)	geholfen
keifen V., *chide*	*kiff	*gekiffen
kennen, KNOW	kannte (e)	gekannt
kieſen IV., CHOOSE; cf. küren	kos (ö)	gekoſen
klemmen IV., *press;* root-changing forms rare, except in an old participle	*klomm (ö)	*geklommen beklommen
klieben IV., CLEAVE	*klob (ö)	*gekloben
klimmen IV., CLIMB	*klomm (ö)	*geklommen
klingen VII., *ring*, CLANG	*klang (ä or ü)	geklungen
kneifen V., *pinch*, NIP	*kniff	*gekniffen
kneipen V., *pinch*, NIP	*knipp	*geknippen
kommen III. (arch. ö), COME	kam (ä)	gekommen
können (Pres. kann, kannſt, kann; können, etc.), CAN, *be able*	konnte (ö)	gekonnt or können
kriechen IV. (arch. eu), CREEP, CROUCH	kroch (ö)	gekrochen
küren IV., CHOOSE; cf. kieſen	*kor (ö)	*gekoren
laden II. (*ä), LOAD; *invite*	*lud[1] (ü)	geladen
laſſen I. (ä), LET	ließ	gelaſſen
laufen I. (äu), *run*, LEAP	lief	gelaufen
leiden V., *suffer*	litt	gelitten
leihen V., LEND	lieh	geliehen

[1] ladete, esp. *loaded*

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	Preterit Ind. (S.)	Past Part.
lesen III. (ie), *read, collect*	las (ä)	gelesen
liegen III., LIE	lag (ä)	gelegen
-lieren only in verlieren (which see)		
-lingen, only in gelingen (which see) and mißlingen		
löschen IV. (*i), *extinguish* (*tr.)	*losch (ö)	*geloschen
lügen IV., LIE	log (ö)	gelogen
mahlen, *grind*, MILL	mahlte	gemahlen
meiden V., *avoid*	mied	gemieden
melken IV. (rarely i), MILK	*molk (ö)	*gemolken
messen III. (i), METE, MEASURE	maß (ä)	gemessen
mögen (Pr. mag, magst, mag; mögen, etc.), MAY, *like, can*	mochte (ö)	gemocht or mögen
müssen (Pr. muß, mußt, muß; müssen, etc.), MUST, *be obliged*	mußte (ü)	gemußt or müssen
nehmen VI. (nimmst, nimmt), *take*	nahm (ä)	genommen
nennen, NAME	nannte	genannt
-nesen, only in genesen (which see)		
-nießen, only in genießen (which see)		
pfeifen V., *whistle*, PIPE	pfiff	gepfiffen
pflegen IV., *cherish, nurse*	*pflog (ö)	*gepflogen
preisen V., PRAISE	pries	gepriesen
quellen IV. (*i), *gush*, *swell up*	*quoll (ö)	*gequollen
rächen IV., *avenge*, WREAK	rächte (arch. roch)	*gerochen
raten I. (ä), *advise*	riet	geraten
reiben V., RUB	rieb	gerieben
reißen V., *tear*	riß	gerissen
reiten V., RIDE	ritt	geritten
rennen, RUN	rannte (e)	gerannt (-ennt)
riechen IV., *smell;* cf. REEK	roch (ö)	gerochen
ringen, VII., WRING	rang (ö), rung (ü)	gerungen
rinnen VI., *flow*, RUN	rann (ä or ö)	geronnen
rufen I., *call*	rief (rarely rufte)	gerufen
salzen, SALT	salzte	gesalzen
saufen IV. (*äu), *drink;* cf. SIP, SUP	soff (ö)	gesoffen
saugen IV., SUCK	*sog (ö)	*gesogen
schaffen II., *create*, cf. SHAPE; **procure;* **be busy*	schuf (ü)	geschaffen
schallen IV., *sound*	*scholl	*gescholllen

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	Preterit Ind. (S.)	Past Part.
-ſchehen, only in geſchehen (which see)		
ſcheiden V., *part*	*ſchied	*geſchieden
ſcheinen V., *appear*, SHINE	ſchien	geſchienen
ſchelten VI. (i), SCOLD	ſchalt (ä or ö)	geſcholten
ſcheren IV, (*ie), SHEAR	ſchor (ö)	geſchoren
ſchieben IV., *push*, SHOVE	ſchob (ö)	geſchoben
ſchießen IV. (arch. eu), SHOOT	ſchoß (ö)	geſchoſſen
ſchinden VII. c., *flay*, SKIN	ſchund (ü)	geſchunden
ſchlafen I. (ä), SLEEP	ſchlief	geſchlafen
ſchlagen II. (ä), *strike*, SLAY	ſchlug (ü)	geſchlagen
ſchleichen V., *sneak, slink*	ſchlich	geſchlichen
ſchleifen V., *whet; *rase*	*ſchliff	*geſchliffen
ſchleißen V., *tear*, SLIT	*ſchliß	*geſchliſſen
ſchließen IV. (arch. eu), *shut*	ſchloß (ö)	geſchloſſen
ſchlingen VII., SLING	ſchlang (ä)	geſchlungen
ſchmeißen V., SMITE	ſchmiß	geſchmiſſen
ſchmelzen IV. (*i), (S)MELT (*tr.)	*ſchmolz (ö)	*geſchmolzen
ſchnauben IV., *snort*, SNUFFLE	*ſchnob (ö)	*geſchnoben
ſchneiden V., *cut*	ſchnitt	geſchnitten
ſchrauben IV., SCREW	*ſchrob (ö)	*geſchroben
ſchrecken VI. (i), *be* SCARED; *SCARE	*ſchrak (ä)	geſchrocken
ſchreiben V., *write;* cf. SCRIBE	ſchrieb	geſchrieben
ſchreien V., *cry*, SHRIEK	ſchrie	geſchrien
ſchreiten V., *stride*	ſchritt	geſchritten
ſchwären, IV. (ie), *ulcerate*	ſchwor (ö)	geſchworen
ſchweigen V., *be silent*	ſchwieg	geſchwiegen
ſchwellen IV. (*i), SWELL (*tr.)	*ſchwoll (ö)	*geſchwollen
ſchwimmen VI., SWIM	ſchwamm (ä)	geſchwommen
ſchwinden VII., *vanish;* cf. SWOON	ſchwand (ä)	geſchwunden
ſchwingen VII., SWING	ſchwang (ä) ſchwung (ü)	geſchwungen
ſchwören IV., SWEAR	ſchwor (ö), ſchwur (ü)	geſchworen
ſehen III. (ie), SEE	ſah (ä)	geſehen
ſein, *be*	war (ä)	geweſen
ſenden, SEND	ſandte (e)	geſandt
ſieden IV., *boil*, SEETHE	*ſott	*geſotten
ſingen VII., SING	ſang (ä)	geſungen
ſinken VII., SINK	ſank (ä)	geſunken
ſinnen VI., *think, meditate*	*ſann (ä or ö)	*geſonnen

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	**Preterit Ind.** (S.)	**Past Part.**
ſitzen III., SIT	ſaß (ä)	geſeſſen
ſollen (Pr. ſoll, ſollſt, ſoll), *ought*, SHALL	ſollte	geſollt or ſollen
ſpalten, SPLIT	ſpaltete	geſpalten
ſpeien V., SPIT	*ſpie (S. ſpiee)	*geſpieen
ſpinnen VI., SPIN	ſpann (ä or ö)	geſponnen
ſpleißen V., SPLIT	*ſpliß	*geſpliſſen
ſprechen VI. (i), SPEAK	ſprach (ä)	geſprochen
ſprießen IV. (arch. eu), SPROUT	ſproß (ö)	geſproſſen
ſpringen VII., SPRING	ſprang (ä)	geſprungen
ſtechen VI. (i), *prick*, STITCH	ſtach (ä)	geſtochen
ſtecken VI. (*i), STICK (*tr.)	*ſtak (ä)	*geſtocken
ſtehen III., STAND	ſtand (ä), ſtund (ü)	geſtanden
ſtehlen VI. (ie), STEAL	ſtahl (ä or ö)	*geſtohlen
ſteigen V., *ascend*	ſtieg	geſtiegen
ſterben VI. (i), *die;* cf. STARVE	ſtarb (ä or ü)	geſtorben
ſtieben IV., *scatter*	ſtob (ö)	geſtoben
ſtinken VII., STINK	ſtank (ä), ſtunk (ü)	geſtunken
ſtoßen I. (ö), *push*	ſtieß	geſtoßen
ſtreichen V., STROKE	ſtrich	geſtrichen
ſtreiten V, *strive, fight*	ſtritt	geſtritten
thun (anom. 143), DO	that (ä)	gethan
tragen II. (ä), *carry;* cf. DRAG	trug (ü)	getragen
treffen VI. (i), *hit, meet*	traf (ä)	getroffen
treiben V., DRIVE	trieb	getrieben
treten III. (trittſt, tritt), TREAD	trat (ä)	getreten
triefen IV. (arch. eu), DRIP	*troff (ö)	*getroffen
trinken VII., DRINK	trank (ä), trunk (ü)	getrunken
trügen IV., *cheat*, BETRAY	trog (ö)	getrogen
ver-derben VI. (*i), *spoil* (*tr.)	*verdarb (ä)	*verdorben
ver-drießen IV., *vex*	verdroß (ö)	verdroſſen
ver-geſſen III. (i), FORGET	vergaß (ä)	vergeſſen
ver-lieren IV., LOSE	verlor (ö)	verloren
wachſen II. (ä), *grow*, WAX	wuchs (ü)	gewachſen
wägen IV., WEIGH (*tr.)	*wog (ö)	*gewogen
waſchen II. (*ä), WASH	wuſch (ü)	gewaſchen
weben IV., WEAVE	*wob (ö)	gewoben
-wegen, only in bewegen (which see)		
weichen V., *yield*, WEAKEN, **soften*	*wich	*gewichen
weiſen *show*, V.	wies	gewieſen

Infinitive (2d, 3d Pres.)	Preterit Ind. (S.)	Past Part.
wenden, *turn*	wandte[1](e)	gewandt[1]
werben VI. (i), *sue, woo*	warb (ä or ü)	geworben
werden VI. (Pr. wirſt, wird), *become, shall, be*	ward / wurde } (S. würde)	geworden
werfen VI. (i), *throw* (cf. WARP)	warf (ä or ü)	geworfen
wiegen IV., WEIGH, **rock*	*wog (ö)	*gewogen
winden VII., WIND	wand (ä)	gewunden
-winnen, only in gewinnen (which see)		
wiſſen (Pr. weiß, weißt, weiß, wiſſen, etc.), *know;* cf. WIT	wußte (ü)	gewußt
wollen Pr. (will, willſt, will, wollen, etc.), WILL	wollte	gewollt
zeihen V., *accuse*	zieh	geziehen
ziehen IV. (arch. euch), *draw*	zog (ö)	gezogen
zwingen VII., *force*	zwang (ä)	gezwungen

COMPOUND VERBS

(i.e. verbs with a prepositional or other prefix)

160. Compound verbs are, as a rule, conjugated like simple verbs. But, in certain cases, the prefix is separated from the verb and placed after it, at the end of the independent clause.

Hence we must distinguish between: —

1. Inseparable compounds.
2. Separable compounds.

161. Inseparable Compounds. These are conjugated precisely as if they were simple verbs, except that they have no participial ge-prefix (**137**, 3): —

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT INDIC.	PAST PARTICIPLE
be-lieb-en, *like*	belieb-te	belieb-t
Pres. Indic. beliebe, etc.: like lieben.		
ver-fall-en, *decay*	verfiel	verfall-en
Pres. Indic. verfalle, etc.: like fallen.		

[1] Also New conjugation.

162. Inseparable prefixes are: —

1. Certain particles, never used independently, viz.: be-, ent- (emp-), er-, ge-, ver-, zer-, always accentless; miß-, accented or unaccented: be-setz'en, *occupy*, ver-gess'en, *forget*, etc.

Exceptionally the participial ge- and zu- may come in between miß- and the verb.

2. The preposition wider, *against*, when toneless.

3. The prepositions durch, *through*, um, *around*, über, *over*, unter, *under*, hinter, *behind*, and the adverb voll, *full*, when they are unaccented, merging their sense with the verb-sense into a modified conception: über-setz'en, *translate* (but ü'ber-setzen, über separable, *set over* or *across*); durch-bre'chen, *penetrate*, *perforate* (but durch'-brechen, durch separable, *break through*); voll-enden, *complete*.

4. Nouns which, though accented, have lost something of their independent meaning: rat'-schlagen, *deliberate;* wahr'-sagen, *prophesy*.

163. Separable Compounds. The conjugation of these verbs varies somewhat, according as they occur in dependent or in independent clauses. Thus: —

1. In Dependent clauses, these compound verbs are conjugated as if they were simple, except that the participial ge-prefix (and the Infinitive sign zu, if there is one) is placed between the prefix and the verb itself: —

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT INDIC.	PAST PARTICIPLE
durch'-leb-en,[1] *live through*	durch'-leb-te	durch'-ge-leb-t
[durch'-zu-leben, *to live through*]		
Present durchleb-e, durchleb-st, durchleb-t; durchleb-en, etc., like leben		
ab'-fallen, *fall off*	ab'-fiel	ab'-ge-fall-en
[ab-zu-fallen, *to fall off*]		
Present abfall-e, abfäll-st, abfäll-t; abfall-en, etc., like fallen		

[1] The whole word written as one (hyphens here used to separate its parts).

2. **In Independent clauses, they are conjugated in the same way, except that the prefix is separated from a personal verb form (Present, Preterit, Imperative) and placed at the end of the clause: —**

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT INDIC.	PAST PARTICIPLE
durch'=leb-en	leb-te . . durch	durch'=ge=leb-t
[durch'=zu=leben]		
Present leb-e . . durch, leb-st . . durch, leb-t . . durch; leben . . durch, etc.		
ab'=fall-en	fiel . . ab	ab'=ge=fall-en
[ab=zu=fallen]		
Pres. Indic. fall-e . . ab, fäll-st . . ab, fäll-t . . ab; fall-en . . ab, etc.		

164. Separable prefixes are: All independent words occurring in composition with a verb, except those mentioned in **162, 3**, when toneless. The separable prefixes always have the accent: aus'=gehen, *go out;* ein'=laden, *invite;* weg'=nehmen, *take away, remove;* acht'=geben, *give heed;* durch'=brechen, *break through*, etc.

EXERCISES XXIX, XXX

VERB PHRASES

165. German, like English, expresses various tense, mode, or voice relations by phrases consisting of one or more auxiliaries and a nominal form (Participle or Infinitive) of the main verb. The principle of this formation is the same, on the whole, in the two languages; but there are some discrepancies as regards the auxiliary used in certain cases, and especially as regards the position of the auxiliary and the main verb in the clause.

I. Simple Verb Phrases (with one Auxiliary)

166. Simple Verb Phrases with the Auxiliary haben, *have*. These phrases, serving to express past action, are analo-

gously formed in German and English: **ich habe (du** haſt, etc.) geliebt; *I have* (*you have*, etc.) *loved;* ich hatte, etc., geliebt, *I had*, etc., *loved.* But the position of the auxiliary and the main verb varies: —

1. In Independent clauses (and cf. 2, note 1) the nominal verb form comes at the end of the clause, the Infinitive (with its zu, if used) after the Past Participle: —

Ich habe den Mann geliebt.	*I have loved the man.*
Sie kann den Mann nicht geliebt haben.	*She cannot have loved the man.*
Er iſt ſtolz ſie geliebt zu haben.	*He is proud to have loved her.*

2. In Dependent clauses actually introduced by a relative or a conjunction, the personal verb form comes at the end of the clause, and the nominal verb form or forms before it. Sometimes the auxiliary is understood: —

Den Mann, den ſie geliebt (hat).	*The man whom she has loved.*
Sie ſagt, daß ſie den Mann geliebt habe.[1]	*She says she has loved the man.*

NOTES 1. — If the introductory conjunction is omitted, the order is that of an independent clause:

Sie ſagt, ſie habe den Mann geliebt.	*She says she has loved the man.*
Ich glaube, ſie habe ihn nicht lieben können (Past Part.).	*I believe she cannot have loved him.*

2. — Many intransitive verbs, which, in English, take the auxiliary *have*, take, in German, *be* (ſein): cf. **168**.

167. Simple Verb Phrases with ſein, *be.* Phrases, serving to express a completed act, or a state or condition

[1] The Subjunctive is used in indirect quotation (**185**).

resulting from such act, are formed with sein, corresponding English phrases using *have* or (less often) *be*: ich bin (du bist, etc.) gegangen, *I have* or *am gone;* ich war (etc.) gegangen, *I had* or *was gone.* Their arrangement is identical with that of haben-phrases (**166**): —

1. Er ist mit seinem Bruder ausgegangen.	*He has gone out with his brother.*
Er ist gestorben.	*He has died.*
Das Haus ist abgebrannt.	*The house is (has) burned down.*
2. Der Mann, der nach Hause gegangen ist.	*The man who has gone home.*
Sie sagt, daß er gestorben sei (or Sie sagt, er sei gestorben).	*She says (that) he has died.*

168. The most important of the verbs requiring sein in German, where *have* is the only or the more common auxiliary in English, are: —

1. Sein, *be*, bleiben, *remain;* begegnen, *meet;* folgen, *follow;* gelingen, *succeed.* Thus ich bin (du bist, etc.) gewesen, *I have* (*you have*, etc.) *been*, etc.

2. Verbs denoting motion: gehen, *go;* fahren, *drive;* reisen, *travel;* fliegen, *fly;* fliehen, *flee;* laufen, *run;* kommen, *come;* landen, *land*, etc.: —

Er ist gegangen (gekommen).	*He has gone (come).*
Das Kind ist gefallen.	*The child has fallen.*

NOTE. — Some verbs of motion may take haben when the motion is considered by itself: er ist nach Berlin gereist, *he has gone to Berlin;* but er hat viel gereist, *he has traveled much;* er ist von einem Ufer zum andern geschwommen, *he swam from one bank to the other;* but er hat im tiefen Wasser geschwommen, *he swam in the deep water.*

3. Verbs denoting a change of condition, such as werden, wachsen, reifen, sterben, etc.: —

Er ist arm geworden.	*He has become (grown) poor.*
Er ist gestorben.	*He has died.*
Die Blüten sind ausgeschlagen.	*The flowers have bloomed.*

169. Simple Verb Phrases with werden, *become* (**156**). These phrases are of two distinct kinds: —

1. Future and Conditional phrases.
2. Passive phrases.

170. Future and Conditional phrases are made by the aid of the auxiliary verb werden (then rendered by *shall, will*, etc.) and an Infinitive, as corresponding phrases are made in English by the auxiliary *shall* or *will* and an Infinitive: —

Ich werde (du wirst, etc.) lieben.	*I shall (you will,* etc.) *love.*
Ich würde (etc.) lieben.	*I should* (etc.) *love.*

The rules of arrangement are the same as for phrases with haben (**166**): —

Er wird das Kind lieben.	*He will love the child.*
Er würde ihn geliebt haben, hätte er ihn gekannt.	*He would have loved him, had he known him.*
Er glaubt, daß er den Lehrer nicht lieben werde (or Er glaubt, er werde den Lehrer nicht lieben).	*He thinks he will not love the teacher.*

171. Simple Passive Verb phrases are made with werden as auxiliary and the Past Participle of the main verb, as corresponding phrases are made in English with the aid of the auxiliary *be :* ich werde (du wirst, etc.) geliebt, *I am* (*you are*, etc.) *loved ;* ich wurde (etc.) geliebt, *I was* (etc.) *loved.*

The rules of arrangement are the same as for phrases with haben (**166**) : —

Er wird von allen geliebt.	*He is loved by everybody.*
Er glaubt, daß er von ihr geliebt werde (or Er glaubt, er werde von ihr geliebt).	*He thinks he is loved by her.*

NOTE. — By the use of sein as auxiliary to express a completed action or a resultant state, and werden to express a passive condition, i.e. the actual endurance of an action, German distinguishes more clearly than English between these meanings, and has no need of expressions like *is being*, and the like, to avoid ambiguity. Cf. Das Haus ist gebaut, *the house is built*, i.e. *completed ;* das Haus wird gebaut, *the house is building* or *being built*, i.e. *in process of building.*

172. Simple Verb Phrases with a Modal Auxiliary (**142**). These phrases, serving to express various mode-relations, are made, like corresponding phrases in English, by a modal auxiliary and the Infinitive of the main verb: ich kann (soll, will, etc.) kommen, *I can* (*shall*, *must*, *will*, etc.) *come ;* ich könnte (etc.) kommen, *I could* (etc.) *come.*

The rules of arrangement are the same as for phrases with haben (**166**) : —

1. Ich kann nicht mit ihm kommen.	*I cannot come with him.*

2. Er sagt, daß er nicht kommen könne (or Er sagt, er könne nicht kommen).	*He says he cannot come.*

II. Complex Verb Phrases (more than one Auxiliary)

173. Complex verb phrases, consisting of an auxiliary verb phrase and a nominal form of the main verb, are made as in English (observing, of course, the use of the proper auxiliary): ich werde geliebt haben, *I shall have loved;* ich bin (**168**, 3.) geliebt worden, *I have been loved,* etc.

174. The principle of arrangement is ordinarily the same as for simple phrases with haben (**166**), observing that the nominal form of the main verb precedes that of the auxiliary, and that an auxiliary Participle precedes an auxiliary Infinitive: —

1. MAIN CLAUSES

Er hat seinen Lehrer nicht lieben können (Past Part., **142**).	*He has not been able to love his teacher.*
Er wird ihn bald gefunden haben.	*He will soon have found him.*
Er ist von jedermann geliebt worden (Past Part., **142**).	*He has been loved by everybody.*
Er würde von ihr geliebt worden sein (*have*, **168**, 3).	*He would have been loved by her.*

II. DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Er ist ein Mann, der von jedermann geliebt worden ist.	*He is a man who has been beloved by everybody.*
Sie sagt, daß sie ihn nicht geliebt haben könne (or Sie sagt, sie könne ihn nicht geliebt haben).	*She says she has not been able to love* (or *could not love*) *him.*
Er denkt, daß er ihn bald gefunden haben werde (or Er denkt, er werde ihn bald gefunden haben; and cf. note).	*He thinks he will soon have found him.*

NOTE. — In dependent clauses, the personal verb may, for euphony, be placed immediately before, instead of after, *two* nominal verb forms; and this order is required when the second nominal form is a modal auxiliary: —

Ich fürchte, daß er sie nicht werde lieben können (Inf.).	*I fear he will not be able to love her.*
Wenn er sie hätte lieben können (Past Part.).	*If he could have loved her.*
Ich weiß, daß sie werden geliebt werden (to avoid werden werden).	*I know they will be beloved.*
Sobald ich ihn werde gesehen haben.	*As soon as I shall have seen him.*

175. Complex Passive Verb Phrases. As the auxiliaries used in forming passive verb phrases differ in German and English, it will be well to add to the preceding rules a synopsis of all the passive phrases of lieben, arranged as in independent clauses. They are:[1] —

[1] The Passive auxiliary *be* is in German werden (**156**). Its auxiliary is sein (**168**, 1).

1. Simple Passive Phrases

PRESENT IND.

Ich werde . . . geliebt,
I am (or *am being*) *loved.*

Du wirst . . . geliebt, etc.

PRESENT SUBJ.

Ich werde . . . geliebt,
I may be (or *am*) *loved.*

Du werdest . . . geliebt, etc.

PRETERIT IND.

Ich ward or wurde[1] . . . geliebt,
I was loved.

Du wardst or wurdest . . . geliebt, etc.

PRETERIT SUBJ.

Ich würde . . . geliebt,
I might be (or *were, was*) *loved.*

Du würdest . . . geliebt, etc.

PRESENT IMP.

Werde (du) . . . geliebt,
be loved.

INFINITIVE

geliebt (zu) werden,
to be loved.

2. Complex Passive Phrases

PERFECT IND.

Ich bin . . . geliebt worden,
I have been loved.

Du bist . . . geliebt worden, etc.

PERFECT SUBJ.

Ich sei . . . geliebt worden,
I (*may*) *have been loved.*

Du seiest . . . geliebt worden, etc.

PLUPERFECT IND.

Ich war . . . geliebt worden,
I had been loved.

Du warst . . . geliebt worden, etc.

PLUPERFECT SUBJ.

Ich wäre . . . geliebt worden,
I might have (or *had*) *been loved.*

Du wärest . . . geliebt worden, etc.

FUTURE IND.

Ich werde . . . geliebt werden,
I shall be loved.

Du wirst . . . geliebt werden, etc.

FUTURE SUBJ.

Ich werde . . . geliebt werden,
I shall be loved.

Du werdest . . . geliebt werden, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT IND.

Ich werde . . . geliebt worden sein,
I shall have been loved.

Du wirst . . . geliebt worden sein, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT SUBJ.

Ich werde . . . geliebt worden sein,
I shall have been loved.

Du werdest . . . geliebt worden sein, etc.

---

[1] wurde is more common than ward, except in poetry.

CONDITIONAL	CONDITIONAL PERFECT
Ich würde . . . geliebt werden, *I should be loved.*	Ich würde . . . geliebt worden sein, *I should have been loved.*
Du würdest . . . geliebt werden, etc.	Du würdest . . . geliebt worden sein, etc.

INFINITIVE PERFECT

Geliebt worden (zu) sein, *to have been loved.*

EXERCISES XXXI, XXXII

SOME PECULIARITIES OF USE AND CONSTRUCTION

Number and Person

176. After an impersonal subject (es, das, dies), the verb agrees in number with the following logical subject: —

Es (or Das, Dies) sind meine Freunde.	*It is* (or *Those are*) *my friends.*
Es leben viele, die das nicht gesehen.	*Many live who have not seen it.*

NOTES. — 1. So also when the predicate is placed before the verb: Die Freude der Mutter waren ihre Kinder. Bist du mein Freund? Das bin ich (or Ich bin es).

2. Es giebt, etc., *there is* or *are*, etc., is invariable: Es giebt einen Mann, *there is a man;* es giebt Männer, *there are men.*

177. After two or more subjects of different person, the verb agrees with an understood pronoun representing both: —

Du und dein Bruder (ihr) seid meine Freunde.	*You and your brother are my friends.*

Tenses

178. Present. The Present is used: —

1. To denote a present act or condition continued from the past (what has been and is): —

Ich wohne schon zwei Jahre hier.	*I have already been living here two years.*
Wie lange sind Sie (schon) in Amerika?	*How long have you been in America?*
Ich kenne ihn seit seiner Kindheit.	*I have known him from his childhood.*

2. More frequently than in English to express a near future action, and in lively narrative: —

Ich reise morgen früh.	*I shall set out to morrow morning.*
In zwei Tagen bin ich zurück.	*I shall be back in two days.*

179. Preterit. The Preterit is used to denote a past act or condition as continued from the past (what had been and was): —

Er wohnte schon lange da.	*He had already been living there a long time.*
Ich kannte ihn seit seiner Kindheit.	*I had known him since his childhood.*

180. Perfect Phrases (with haben or sein). These are frequently used in German to express a past act or condition without relation to other acts or circumstances: —

Gott hat die Welt erschaffen.	*God created the world.*
Wir haben gestern im Garten gespielt.	*We played in the garden yesterday.*
Sie ist gestern in der Kirche gewesen.	*She was in church yesterday.*

181. Future Phrases, aside from expressing futurity, are sometimes used to express a conjecture: —

Er wird wohl schlafen.	*He is probably sleeping.*
Das wird wohl Ihr Bruder sein.	*That is your brother, I suppose.*
Sie werden verhindert worden sein.	*Very likely they have been delayed.*

Mode

SUBJUNCTIVE

182. The Subjunctive, always implying an action of really or rhetorically uncertain or unrealized completion, or else an action referred to by indirect statement of another's words, thoughts or feelings, corresponds, in English, to a Subjunctive, a verb phrase with a modal auxiliary, or an Indicative. Though used chiefly — as implied by the name — in subordinate clauses, it occurs also in main clauses.

183. The chief uses of the Subjunctive are: —

1. To express an uncertain or unrealized action.
2. To express an indirect statement.

184. Subjunctive of Uncertain or Unrealized Action. This Subjunctive is of three kinds: —

1. The **Optative Subjunctive,** expressing a desired, intended, or necessary action, or the reverse: —

Es lebe der König!	*Long live the king!*
Er komme!	*Let him come!*
Ich wünsche, daß dieses Werk gelinge.	*I wish this work may succeed.*
Ich verlange (will, etc.), daß ein jeder seine Pflicht thue.	*I require (want,* etc.) *every man to do his duty.*
Es ist nötig, daß er hier sei.	*It is necessary that he (should) be here.*

Ziele gut, daß du den Apfel treffest.	*Take a good aim, that you may hit the apple.*
Ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe auf Erden.	*Honor thy father and thy mother that thy days may be long upon earth.*
Nenne mir ein Beispiel, das mich überzeuge.	*Give me an example that can convince me.*

NOTE. — Here belongs also the Subjunctive of Concession: es koste was es wolle, *let it cost what it may;* stürbe er auch, *even if he were to die, etc.*

2. The **Potential Subjunctive,** expressing a possible (impossible) or contingent action: —

Es ist möglich (unmöglich), daß er komme.	*It is possible (impossible) that he may (should) come.*
Ob er komme oder nicht, ist mir einerlei.	*Whether he comes or not is indifferent to me.*
Er wäre fast eingeschlafen.	*He had almost fallen asleep.*

3. The **Conditional Subjunctive** (Preterit form), used in both terms of a sentence to state an unrealized condition and result: —

Wäre ich krank, so nähme ich Medizin ein.	*If I were sick, I would take medicine.*
Hätte ich das gewußt, so hätte ich anders gehandelt.	*Had I known that, I would have acted otherwise.*
Wenn ich geblieben wäre, wäre ich glücklicher.	*If I had remained I should be happier.*

NOTES. — 1. Often the Condition is implied: —

In seiner Lage hätte ich das nicht gethan.	*In his place I should not have done that.*

2. The term expressing the conclusion may have the simple Preterit Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive phrase with würde (usually called the Conditional): wenn ich geblieben wäre, so wäre ich glücklicher (or so würde ich glücklicher sein).

3. Either of the terms may stand first. *If* may be expressed by **wenn**, or implied in the verb by placing it first with the subject after. If the conclusion comes last, it is ordinarily introduced by **so**, *then*, as seen in the sentences above.

185. Subjunctive of Indirect Statement. This Subjunctive is used to state, without direct quotation, the words, thoughts, or feelings of some one else, provided they are thus stated without reference to their accomplishment. Here the Subjunctive tense is usually that which would have been used in direct quotation (except where a Present Subjunctive is identical in form with a Present Indicative): —

Sie sagt (sagte), daß sie ihn liebe.	*She says (said) she loves him (= "I love him").*
Man fragte, wer mitgehe.	*They asked who was going along.*
Er schrieb mir, daß er kommen werde.	*He wrote me that he would come.*
Er behauptete, ich hätte (habe = Pres. Ind.) genug gethan.	*He insisted that I had done enough.*
Der Arzt gab uns keine Hoffnung, daß er genesen werde.	*The doctor gave us no hope that he would recover.*
Sie glaubten, daß es wahr sei.	*They believed that it was true.*

NOTE. — Sometimes the governing verb is understood: er wurde geschlagen, weil er unartig gewesen sei, *he was beaten because* (it was claimed that) *he had been naughty.*

186. The tense of the Subjunctive agrees with that of the leading Indicative verb, except as already explained above (**185**).

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Nominal Verb Forms

Infinitive

187. The Infinitive is generally, as in English, preceded by the Infinitive sign, zu, *to:* er liebt zu spielen, *he loves to play.* But it is used without zu in the following cases.

1. As a simple subject: —

Fragen ist leichter als antworten.	*To ask is easier than to answer.*

2. As predicate after sein, bleiben, werden, heißen. The Infinitive is then often rendered by a gerund in -ing: —

Leben ist (or heißt) arbeiten und streben.	*To live means to work and to toil.*
Er blieb liegen.	*He remained lying.*
Das heißt Gottversuchen.	*That is tempting God.*
Wann wird die Freiheit kommen?	*When will freedom come?*

Note. — Sein in the sense of *to be* requires zu with an active Infinitive: was ist zu thun? *what is to be done?* der Brief ist zu schreiben, *the letter is to (must) be written.*

3. After the modal auxiliaries wollen, können, etc., and after heißen, *order;* helfen, lassen, lehren, lernen, and some others, also generally construed without *to* in English: —

Er hieß ihn arbeiten.	*He bade him work.*
Ich darf nicht weilen.	*I must not (am not allowed to) delay.*
Ich habe nicht kommen können.	*I have not been (was not) able to come.*
Hilf mir arbeiten.	*Help me to work.*
Ich lasse ihn kommen.	*I let him (make him, cause him to) come.*

Not lehrt beten.	*Distress teaches us to pray.*
Ich sah (hörte) sie kommen.	*I saw (heard) her coming.*

NOTE. — When, after heißen, lassen (*cause to*), hören, sehen, the subject Accusative (i.e. the performer of the act expressed by the following Infinitive) is omitted, German, unlike English, uses the Infinitive active: —

Er hieß ihn wegführen.	*He ordered him to be taken away* (lit. *He ordered to take him away*).
Er ließ das Buch (Acc.) holen.	*He had the book brought.*
Ich hörte den Brief lesen.	*I heard the letter read.*

188. Ohne, *without;* (an)statt, *instead of;* um, *in order*, are the only prepositions used with the Infinitive, which then must be construed with zu.

Er ist abgereist, ohne von mir Abschied zu nehmen.	*He departed without bidding me good-bye.*
Anstatt mich zu belohnen, schalt er mich.	*Instead of rewarding me, he scolded me.*

Participle

189. The Present Participle is sometimes used after zu in the sense of a passive Infinitive: der zu schreibende Brief kann kurz sein, *the letter* (which is) *to be written may be short.*

190. The Past Participle of the modal auxiliaries (**142**), and of lassen, heißen, helfen, hören, sehen, is, in form, like the Infinitive when it follows another Infinitive: —

Er hat es nicht thun können.	*He has not been able to do it.*
Ich habe gehen wollen.	*I wished to go.*
Er hat uns kommen sehen.	*He saw us coming.*

191. The Past Participle is often used for a Present Participle after kommen to denote the mode of the motion: der Knabe kam gelaufen (geritten, gesprungen), *the boy came running (riding, jumping).*

192. The Past Participle is sometimes used as an Imperative: nicht lange gefeiert, *no (more) idling.*

193. Passive phrases are less common in German than in English, being often replaced by reflexive phrases, or by active phrases with the indefinite subject man: —

Dieses Tier findet sich nur in Afrika.	*This animal is found only in Africa.*
Der ganze Himmel überzog sich mit Wolken.	*The whole sky was covered with clouds.*
Man sagt.	*It is said (one says).*

NOTE. — A passive Infinitive is sometimes formed with sein, instead of werden, after modal auxiliaries: er will für seine Dienste bezahlt sein, *he wishes to be paid for his services.*

MODAL AUXILIARIES (**142**)

194. Wollen and sollen are often used idiomatically to express respectively *claim*, *assertion* and *rumor*, *common report*: —

Er will reich sein.	*He claims to be rich.*
Sie wollen das Haus gekauft haben.	*They claim to have bought the house.*
Er soll reich sein.	*He is said to be rich.*
Sie sollen das Haus gekauft haben.	*They are said to have bought the house.*

Note. — Wollen, at times, is the equivalent of the English phrases *be on the point of*, *be about to*, etc.: wir wollten eben nach Hause, *we were just about to go home;* er will gerade zum Doktor, *he is just going to the doctor*, etc.

REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION

195. German verbs, like English, are often construed with the reflexive or reciprocal pronoun (described at **102**)

as direct or indirect object: ich lobe (lobte, etc.) mich, *I praise* (*praised*, etc.) *myself*, etc.

There is absolutely no change of the verb form in this construction. The only peculiarities that need pointing out here are: —

1. That in German many more verbs are used only as reflexives than in English (where but a very few absolute reflexives remain, like *pride oneself*, *betake oneself*, etc.); and

2. That the reflexive construction generally is more common in German, being rendered in English by a passive or otherwise: ich täusche mich, lit. *I delude myself* = *I am deluded.*

196. Reflexive constructions that cannot be rendered literally in English are ordinarily explained in dictionaries thus: sich freuen (or freuen, refl.), *rejoice;* sich schämen (or schämen, refl.), *be ashamed*, etc.

EXERCISE XXXIV

INDECLINABLES

197. The indeclinables consist, as in English, of Prepositions, used with nouns or pronouns to denote case relation; Adverbs, used to qualify the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; Conjunctions, serving to combine sentences; and Interjections, certain elliptical exclamations.

PREPOSITIONS

198. These, having no other function than to denote case relation, have already been fully described in connection with the topic of noun construction.

ADVERBS

199. Adverbs are of two kinds: Pure Adverbs, and Adjectives used as Adverbs.

200. Pure Adverbs, i.e. indeclinables used as adverbs, are: —

1. Original Adverbs: gern, *willingly;* oft, *often;* sehr, *very*, etc.

2. Cases used adverbially: links, *to the left;* rechts, *to the right;* teils, *partly*, etc.

3. Derivatives with an adverbial ending: frei-lich, *certainly, of course;* erst-ens, *first(ly)*, etc.

4. Adverbial compounds or phrases: ein-mal, *once;* für-wahr, *truly;* so-eben, *just now;* auf einmal, *at once*, etc.

NOTE. — Her, *hither* (usually towards the speaker); hin, *thither* (away from the speaker), are frequently used redundantly at the end of a clause or with an appended adverbial prefix (her-ein', *in;* hin-aus', *out*, etc.) to denote direction after verbs of motion: er ging gegen ihn hin, *he went towards him;* er kam in das Haus herein, *he came into the house;* er ging auf die Straße hinab, *he went down on the street.*

201. Adjectives used as Adverbs. Most adjectives may be used in their uninflected positive or comparative form as adverbs: gut, *well;* besser, *better;* schön, *beautifully;* schöner, *more beautifully.* The adverbial superlative is expressed by phrases like am besten (80) when there is a comparison; and like aufs (for auf das) beste when used absolutely.

202. Comparison of Adverbs. Of pure adverbs only ehe, oft and mehr are compared from their own stems. Others are compared by the aid of borrowed forms. Thus: —

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
wohl, WELL	(beſſer, BETTER	am beſten)
ehe, ERE	eher, *sooner*	am eheſten
bald, *soon*	(eher, *sooner*	am eheſten)
gern, *willingly*	(lieber, *rather*	am liebſten)
oft, OFTEN	öfter, OFTENER	am öfteſten
(viel, *much*)	mehr, MORE	am meiſten

203. Position of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs modifying words other than verbs are, as in English, placed before them (only genug, ENOUGH, being placed after): ſehr reich; nur mein Bruder; but reich genug.

2. Adverbs modifying a verb, unless they introduce the clause, are, in independent clauses, placed after the personal verb (never before, as often in English); and in dependent clauses before the verb or verb phrase, which then comes last.

Their relative position to other verbal adjuncts is somewhat free, depending in part on euphony or emphasis. For the most part, though not necessarily, they immediately follow the verb (or the verb and its pronoun object, when there is one) in independent constructions and immediately precede it in dependent. Adverbs of time usually precede those of place, and both precede those of manner: —

Morgen (introducing the clause) wird er kommen.	*To-morrow he will come.*
Er ſchickt (mir) heute das Buch.	*He sends (me) the book to-day.*
Er hat (mir) heute das Buch (or das Buch heute) geſchickt.	*He has sent (me) the book to-day.*

Es hat heute hier stark geregnet.	*It has been raining hard here to-day.*
Er sagt, daß er morgen hierher kommen werde.	*He says that he will come here to-morrow.*

NOTE. — Nicht precedes verbal adjuncts modified by it, but follows them when it modifies the verb: ich habe ihn nicht heute, sondern gestern gesehen; ich habe ihn heute nicht gesehen.

CONJUNCTIONS

204. The conjunctions are of grammatical importance chiefly because of their influence on the order of words in the sentences which they introduce, as shown below. They are of two kinds, viz.: Co-ordinating, i.e. connecting otherwise independent clauses; and Subordinating, i.e. introducing dependent (subordinated) clauses.

205. Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of two kinds: Pure and Adverbial.

206. 1. Pure Conjunctions (or simple connectives) do not affect the normal order of the clause they introduce. They are: —

und, AND	aber, *but*
oder, OR	allein', *but, only* (cf. ALONE)
denn, *for*	sondern, *but, on the contrary*

2. These conjunctions are placed at the head of the clause. Only aber may be placed after the subject, or after both subject and verb.

3. Aber qualifies; allein introduces an exception to an affirmative or negative statement; sondern introduces an opposite statement.

207. 1. Adverbial Conjunctions, being strictly adverbs qualifying the verb of their clause, like any other introductory adverb, require the verb to be placed by attraction before

the subject: er ist krank, deshalb kann er nicht kommen, *he is sick, hence he cannot come.*

2. Among the principal adverbial conjunctions are: —

Simple		Compound	
da, *then*	noch, *still*	al-so, *accordingly*	des-halb, *therefore*
dann, THEN	so, SO, *then*	da-her ,THERE*fore*	den(n)-noch, *yet*
doch, *yet*, THOUGH	sonst, *else*	dar-um, THERE*fore*	in-dessen, *meanwhile*

208. Subordinating Conjunctions require the personal verb of the subordinated clause to be placed last: ich weiß, daß sie recht bald kommen werden, *I know that they will come quite soon.*

209. 1. Among the commonest of the subordinating conjunctions may be noticed: —

Simple			Compound
als, AS, *when*	bis, *until*	wann, WHEN (at what time)	in-dem, *while*
da, *since*	ehe, ERE	wenn, *if*, WHEN	nach-dem, *after*
daß, THAT	ob, *whether*, IF	wie, *as*, HOW	seit-dem, *since*

2. Ob introduces subject or object clauses; wenn, *if*, conditional clauses.

3. Als, *as*, implies identity; wie, *as*, similarity; als, *when*, is used for past single acts; wie, *as*, *when*, emphasizes simultaneousness more than als.

INTERJECTIONS

210. Interjections are either: —

1. Genuine interjections like ach! *ah!* pfui! *fie!* etc., or

2. Words or phrases used interjectionally, such as weh! WOE! *alas!* gott-lob! GOD *be praised!* bewahre! *God forbid!* etc.

NOTE. — The Infinitive and Past Participle are frequently used imperatively: einsteigen! (eingestiegen!) *get in! all aboard!*

EXERCISE XXXV

Order of Words in the Sentence

211. Though the chief rules of arrangement have been given incidentally in the preceding chapters, it will be well to present the whole subject here in a succinct and systematic way.

There are in German three distinct modes of arranging the sentence, each characterized by a different position of the personal verb, viz.: (1) The Normal Order, in which the personal verb follows its subject; (2) the Inverted Order, in which the personal verb precedes its subject; (3) the Transposed Order, in which the personal verb is placed at the end of the clause.

212. The **Normal** Order, required in independent clauses introduced by the subject (with or without adjuncts), and also in dependent clauses with an understood (omitted) introductory daß, *that*, is as follows: —

1. Subject with its adjuncts	
(1) Der junge Sohn der Frau	*The young son of the woman*
2. personal verb	
(2) hat	*has*
3. verbal adjuncts (verbal noun last)	
(3) mir heute das Buch zurückgeschickt.	*sent the book back to me to-day.*

213. The verbal adjuncts are arranged as follows: —

1. Separable prefixes come last when there is no verbal noun, i.e. Participle or Infinitive (.. schickte .. zurück), but are prefixed to verbal nouns (.. zurückgeschickt.).

2. Of more than one verbal noun, the one serving as an auxiliary must be placed last (.. würde .. zurückgeschickt

haben, .. hat .. nicht zurückschicken können); and of two such auxiliaries, the Infinitive is placed last (.. zurückgeschickt worden sein).

3. Personal pronouns usually come next after the verb (.. hat mir .. geschickt).

4. Nouns ordinarily come in this order: Dative, Accusative, Genitive (.. hat dem Manne das Buch .. geschickt).

5. Adverbs modifying the verb follow it (or the object pronoun, when there is one) in this order: adverbs of time, place, manner (.. hat mich gestern hier .. zurückgeschickt). Cf. also **203**.

214. The **Inverted** Order is required in independent clauses introduced by some one of the verbal adjuncts, or the verb itself (as in interrogative, imperative, and optative clauses), or preceded by an adverbial clause; and also in dependent clauses of a similar kind, when an introductory *that* or *if* is understood. It is like the normal, except that the personal verb precedes the subject (or a pronoun object and noun subject when both occur): —

Independent Clauses

Heute (verb. adj.)	— hat (mir) der Sohn	— das Buch geschickt.
Das Buch	— " " " "	— heute[1] geschickt.
Geschickt	— " " " "	— heute das Buch.
Mir	— hat der Sohn	— heute das Buch geschickt.
Hat	— (mir) der Sohn	— " " " "

Dependent Clauses

Er sagt, — heute — habe (ihm) der Sohn — das Buch geschickt.
Hat (mir) der Sohn — heute das Buch geschickt, — so ist es gut.

NOTE. — A pure co-ordinating conjunction (**206**) does not, of course, necessitate inversion.

---

[1] Also hat (mir) heute der Sohn (**203**, 2).

215. The **Transposed** Order is required in all dependent clauses actually introduced by a relative, or a subordinating conjunction (**208**). It is like the normal, except that the *personal verb is placed last* (or exceptionally before its verbal adjuncts: Note 2): —

Main Clause		**Dependent Clause**
Es ist sein Sohn,	—	der (rel.) mir das Buch geschickt hat.
Er sagt,	—	daß (conj.) er mir das Buch geschickt habe.

NOTES. — 1. A pronoun object is often placed before a noun subject: er sagt, daß mir sein Sohn das Buch geschickt habe.

2. The personal verb may for euphony precede two verbal nouns, and regularly does so if the second is a Participle of an Infinitive form (**142**): er sagt, daß er das Buch nicht habe schicken können (daß er das Buch werde schicken lassen; daß das Buch sei geschickt worden; daß das Buch werde geschickt werden).

3. A personal form of the auxiliary haben (rarely of sein) is often left understood: das Buch, das er mir geschickt (hat).

EXERCISE I

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS (1–10)

Heavy-type words, already given in the rules, are intended to serve as key word in the exercises. Matters to which the student's attention has not been directed in the general enunciation of principles in 1–10 are specially indicated.

SIMPLE VOWELS

a. **Gabe, habe,** raten, schaden, las, Maß, Namen, Bahn, Adler, Paar, Staat, brach, Starling.

Falle, alt, an, Mann, Hand, warten, Gestalt, Gespann', Schatten, Narbe, Garten, bald, Axt, Achse.

ä. **mähen,** Mähder, Schäfer, Schäden, gebä'ren, Säge, Gebär'de, Ähre, Väter, Käfer.

Fälle, Ställe, März, älter, Äxte, ändern, ärmer, Bäcker, gräßlich, nächst.

e. **leben,** beten, treten, Beet, Theer, beben, Gerede, Eden; fehlen, steht, Lehren,[1] wer, er, Ehre, Erde.

denn, wenn, nennen, bellen, Zelt, Feld, Welt, Scherben, werben, endlich, Tempel, fressen, Vetter.

begeh'ren, beliebt', Gewer'be, verlas'sen, ertra'gen, laben, loben, leere, lehre, gewe'sen, gene'sen, gele'sen, entge'hen.

i, ie. **Tiger,** Igel, mir, ihr, dir, Fibel, ihnen, Ihnen, ihren, Ihren; die, Liebe, Tiegel, Siegel, Diebe, schieden, schießen, frieren, fliegen, schienen, Riemen.

---

[1] Before *r* the *e* has rather an opener sound, approaching the sound of *ai* in *air*.

finden, in, gewin'nen, irren, Iltis, Ilse, triff, ritten, beflis'sen, still.

o. **loben**, gescho'ren, Schober, Lohn, groß, rot, log, Lohe, schon, Lotse.

solle, Wolle, hoffen, Schloß, geschlossen, fordern, sondern, gesot'ten, Ort, Loch, geschwom'men, gespon'nen.

ö. **schön**, Föhn, Töne, Öl, hören, löblich, böte, schnöde, möglich, rötlich, fröre, Röhre, Köder, Größe.

Hölle, Örter, könnte, Böller, Söller, Köche, röcheln, Schöffe, Körper, schöpfen, Schlösser, ergötz'lich.

u. **Blume**, Muhme, lud, schuf, trug, Kur, gut, Fuß, Ruhm.

Mutter, Suppe, Brust, Runde, Nuß, Ruck, Butter, bummeln, Zucker.

ü. **führen**, üben, trügen, Güter, fügen, Züge, kühl, brüten, Bügel, erhüben.

Hülle, rütteln, Brüllen, Sünde, Nüsse, Mütter, kümmern, Fürst, kürzer, Hülfe, Brücke, füllen, Stütze, Mütze.

y. **Mythe**, Scythe, Analy'se, Asyl', Ely'sium, Hieroglyphen.

System', Myrte, Idyl'le, Tyrann', Cylin'der, Polyp'.

DIPHTHONGS

ai, ei. **Kaiser**, Mai, Waise, Hain; Ei, bleiben, leiden, pfeifen, eigen, Eiche, feil, Eimer, ein, eitel, Fleiß, Kreide.

au. **Haus**, Maul, rauben, raufen, rauh, Raum, raunen, Raupe, auch, Faust, kaum, Laub.

äu, eu. **Säule**, Mäuse, Bäume, Zäune, äußern; Eule, heulen, Beute, fleugt, euch, Freunde.

EXERCISE II

CONSONANTS (11–13)

b. **Bahn**, bar, bessern; — **ab**, **Abt**, Ablaut, lieben, geliebt', gewo'ben, Abfall, Ablaß, Abreise, Abschied.

c. **Ceder**, Cäsar, circulie'ren, Docent'; Cultur', Codex, Colle'gium.

ch. **Choral'**, Chlor, Christus, Chronik, Charak'ter; **wachsen**, Dachs, Wuchs; — **Achtung**, hoch, Macht, lachen, Sache, krachen, Loch, pochen, roch, Buch, suchen, Geruch, Fluch, Flüche, Bücher, Löcher, Mächte; **Licht**, riechen, weichen, euch, Heuchler, räuchern, Blech, Sichel, kriechen, Chemie', Chirurg'; — **Chef**, charmant', Chara'de.

d. **Bad**, **stündlich**, Stadt, baden, Boden, Deckel, Dächer, rund, Runde, Kind, kindlich, wandte, Verwand'lung.

g. **geben**, Gut, gehen, groß, regieren, Flagge, Begierde, Götter, begren'zen; — **Tag**, tagte, Sieg, siegte, regnen, regsam, regelrecht, Tage, täglich; — Genie', genie'ren.

h. **Jahr**, mehr, thun, ehe, bejahen, Haut, Haar, heute, höflich, häßlich, Hülfe, Thor, That, Thomas.

j. **jeder**, Johan'nes, jetzt, Joch, Jammer, jämmerlich, Jagd, jagen.

ng. **Finger**, gelin'gen, Wangen, bringe, Ding, Frühling, gelun'gen.

qu. **Qual**, Quaste, quellen, quer, quoll, Quaderstein.

r. **roh**, fahren, Vater, reiben, rufen, Rose, rächen, Rätsel.

s. **so**, sagen, salzen, Rose, Eisen, Läuse; — **Gras**, Küste, Wulst, best, Nest; — **spalten**, sprechen, spielen, Sprüche,

Gespie'len, Gestalt', Gespräch'; — **Straße**, Gasse, läßt, laß, erläß'lich, Maß, aßen, fressen, friß, frißt, beißen, biß, gebis'sen, groß, größer, größt.

sch. **Schall**, Schelm, wünschen, waschen, rutschen, Wunsch.

t(h). **Tag**, teilen, taub; Thor, That; thun, zuletzt', Mütze, ätzen, Ketzer.

v. **Vers**, Vater, Vetter, viel, voll, vertei'len, Veilchen, Vieh, Vogel; — **Vase**, Violi'ne, Advocat', oval', privat'; Novem'ber. Pulver, but relativ', instinktiv' (= *f*).

w. **wahr**, war, Wasser, wohl, Weg, wollen, schwarz, schwören, schwüre, schwären.

z. **zu**, Tanz, Kreuz, Kranz, Katze, Fratze, zahm, zwei, zwar.

EXERCISE III

ARTICLES (**25**); OLD DECLENSION NOUNS, CLASS I (**36**)

In learning the vocabulary of the following exercises, the student should memorize the noun and its article together. English words, cognate in form with the German, are printed in capitals; C. denotes "cognate word, though not the actual, ordinary meaning." On page 129 a tabular presentation of the more striking sound correspondences between German and English will be given.

To aid the student in the acquisition of a vocabulary, as far as possible on the basis of derivation, some related word-group is added to almost every exercise, preparatory to a more systematic presentation of the subject of derivation later on. A hyphen will serve to separate stem and formative parts; a double hyphen, to separate members of a compound.

Vocabulary

Der, *the:*

Bruder (¨),[1] BROTHER
Vater (¨), FATHER
Onkel, UNCLE
Lehrer, *teacher*
Schüler, SCHOLAR
Garten (¨), GARDEN
Boden (¨), *soil, floor,* BOTTOM
Vogel (¨), *bird,* c. FOWL
Morgen, MORNING
Vetter, *cousin* (male)

Das, *the:*

Gold, GOLD
Silber, SILVER
Mädchen, *girl,* MAIDEN
Fräulein, *young lady, miss*
Kloster (¨), CLOISTER
Gebäude, *building*

Die, *the:*

Mutter (¨), MOTHER
Tochter (¨), DAUGHTER

und, AND
nicht, NOT
viele, *many*
zu Hause, *at home*
auf, UPon
in, IN

ich hab-e, *I have*
du ha-st, *you have*
er ha-t, *he has*
wir hab-en, *we have*
ihr hab-t, *you have*
sie hab-en, *they have*

ich lieb-e, *I love*
du lieb-st, *you love*
er lieb-t, *he loves*
wir lieb-en, *we love*
ihr lieb-t, *you love*
sie lieb-en, *they love*

DERIVATIVES

lieb-en, LOVE
- Lieb-e, f. *love*
  - lieb-los, *loveless*
  - lieb-reich, *amiable*

lieb, *dear*
- lieb-lich, *lovely*
- Lieb-ling, m. *darling*

Translate: — 1. Der Bruder des Vaters; die Töchter der Mütter; der Tochter der Mutter; den Schülern des Lehrers. 2. Dem Onkel des Fräuleins; im Garten des Klosters; den Lehrern der Brüder und der Töchter. 3. Des Lehrers Schüler or die Schüler des Lehrers; der Bruder der Mutter. 4. Wir lieben den Vater und die Mutter. 5. Er liebt das Silber und das Gold. 6. Hat der Onkel einen Liebling? 7. Das Mädchen hat einen Vogel; sie liebt den Vogel. 8. Hat sie Vögel? 9. Liebt der Vater die Tochter? 10. Die

[1] Forms thus marked take the Umlaut.

Brüder haben Gärten und Gebäude. 11. Wir haben viele Vögel im Garten. 12. Der Lehrer hat den Schüler lieb (cf. Eng. *to hold dear*). 13. Hat die Mutter viele Töchter zu Hause? 14. Du hast des Fräuleins Vogel. 15. Das Kloster hat nicht[1] viele Gebäude. 16. Ich habe den Vogel nicht.[1]

1. Of the brothers; to the father; in the garden; upon the soil (Dat.); of the morning. 2. To the birds; the soil of the garden; the girl's father. 3. The young lady has a teacher. 4. He loves the birds. 5. They love father and mother. 6. The uncle does not love gold.

Note (sent. 9, above), that the German does not make use of *do*, *does*, etc., in interrogatory or negative statements. Be careful, then, to render English expressions like: *does he love his father*, *he does not love his mother*, etc., by the simple verb form: *loves he? he loves not*, etc.

EXERCISE IV

ARTICLES (**25**); OLD DECLENSION NOUNS, CLASS II (**36**)

Vocabulary

Der:

Baum (¨), *tree*, c. BEAM
Ast (¨), *branch*
Zweig, TWIG
Tag, DAY
Sohn (¨), SON
Jüngling, YOUTH
Korb (¨), *basket*
Arzt (¨), *physician*
Monat, MONTH
Herbst, *autumn*, c. HARVEST

Das:

Tier, *animal*, c. DEER
Pferd, *horse*
Haar, HAIR
Jahr, YEAR

Die:

Braut (¨), BRIDE
Hand (¨), HAND
Nacht (¨), NIGHT
Haut (¨), *skin*, HIDE

---

[1] For position of nicht, cf. **203**, note.

grau, grauer, GRAY, GRAYER
alt, älter, OLD, OLDER or ELDER
kalt, kälter, COLD, COLDER
warm, wärmer, WARM, WARMER
groß, größer, *big*, *bigger* or GREAT, etc.

schon, *already*
sehr, *very;* cf. the expression SORE *afraid*
noch, *yet*, *still*
noch nicht, *not yet*
aber, *however*

ich bin, *I am*
du bist, *you are*
er ist, *he is*
wir sind, *we are*
ihr seid, *you are*
sie sind, *they are*

ich werd-e, *I become*, *grow*,[1] etc.
du wir-st, *you become*, etc.
er wird, *he becomes*, etc.
wir werd-en, *we become*, etc.
ihr werd-et, *you become*, etc.
sie werd-en, *they become*, etc.

es sind, *there are*

DERIVATIVES

Tag, DAY { tag-en, *dawn*; Tage-dieb, m. *rascal*, lit. *day*-THIEF

be-tag-t, *aged*
täg-lich, *daily*

Translate: — 1. Der Ast des Baumes; den Ästen der Bäume; die Zweige der Äste; der Liebling der Braut. 2. Der Monate des Jahres; der Haut des Pferdes; den Bräuten der Jünglinge. 3. Ist der Baum groß? 4. Die Tage werden schon wärmer, die Nächte noch nicht. 5. Die Tage sind noch warm, die Nächte aber werden schon kälter. 6. Die Mutter des Jünglings ist schon zu Hause. 7. Der Lehrer wird aber noch nicht grau. 8. Der Morgen tagt. 9. Ist der Onkel schon betagt? 10. Er wird täglich älter. 11. Ein Baum hat viele Äste. 12. Die Söhne sind noch nicht zu Hause. 13. Ist der Arzt noch nicht alt? 14. Die Bäume werden täglich größer. 15. Die Tochter ist der Mutter lieb. 16. Sind die Schüler dem Lehrer lieb?

1. The tree of the garden; trees; the days of the months; the hair of the skin of animals. 2. Of the twigs

[1] The verb werden may be rendered by *become*, *grow*, *turn*, *get*, *be:* müde werden, *become tired;* groß werden, *grow tall;* grau werden, *turn gray;* zornig werden, *get angry*, etc.

of the trees; not yet a year old. 3. Mother's hair is turning gray.[1] 4. The horse is getting bigger daily. 5. Trees have very many branches. 6. The nights are getting colder; the days, however, are still very warm. 7. The birds are still upon the tree (Dat.). 8. There are trees in the garden.

EXERCISE V

ARTICLES (25); OLD DECLENSION NOUNS, CLASS III (36)

Vocabulary

Der:

Wald (¨), *forest*, WOLD
Geist, *spirit*, GHOST
Gott (¨), GOD
Mann (¨), *husband*, MAN; in compounds the plural is usually -leute

Das:

Haus (¨), HOUSE
Weib, *woman*, WIFE

Das:

Land (¨), *country*, LAND
Blatt (¨), *leaf*, BLADE
Huhn (¨), *chicken*, HEN
Feld, FIELD
Dorf (¨), *village*, c. THORP
Ei, EGG
Buch (¨), BOOK
Gras (¨), GRASS
Glas (¨), GLASS

Inflect in the singular like ein: mein, MY; sein, *his, its*; unser, OUR; ihr, *her, their*

der, das, die (rel. pr.), *who*
wo, WHERE
hier, HERE
ganz, *entire(ly), very*

ich war, *I was*
du war-st, *you were*
er war, *he was*
wir war-en, *we were*
ihr war-et, *you were*
sie war-en, *they were*
Past part. = gewesen, *been*

ich hat-te, *I had*
du hat-test, *you had*
er hat-te, *he had*
wir hat-ten, *we had*
ihr hat-tet, *you had*
sie hat-ten, *they had*
Past part. = gehabt, *had*

es waren, *there were*

---

[1] The German has no "progressive" nor "emphatic" verb-form; translate all such expressions by the simple verb: "I turn gray; the horse grows daily larger," etc.

DERIVATIVES

hab-en, HAVE	Hab-e, f. *possessions*	wohl=hab-end, *well-to-do, rich*
	vor=hab-en, *intend*	In=hab-er, m. *occupant, possessor*
	Vor=hab-en, n. *plan, purpose*	

Translate: — 1. Die Wälder des Landes; der Blätter der Bäume; die Blätter des Buches; dem Geiste Gottes. 2. Der Arzt ist der Inhaber des Hauses. 3. Mein Vater wird wohlhabend. 4. Wir waren im Walde und auf den Feldern. 5. Es waren viele Eier im Korbe. 6. Sind Mutter und Kind noch nicht zu Hause? 7. Das Mädchen war noch ein Kind; sie liebte den Wald und das Feld. 8. Die Weiber hatten viele Hühnereier im Korbe. 9. Wo waren die Hühner? auf dem Felde oder (*or*) in dem Garten? 10. Es waren viele Landleute hier. 11. Ihre Hühner werden schon groß. 12. Gott ist unser Vater. 13. Liebt unsere Mutter die Vögel der Wälder? 14. Wo hat das Weib den Eierkorb?[1] 15. Es waren Eier in dem Grase. 16. Sind Blätter auf den Bäumen der Felder? 17. Hat das Kind das Vorhaben in den Wald zu gehen (*to go*, etc.)? 18. Unser Gott ist ein Geist: wir sind Geister. 19. Das Mädchen hat ein Lieblingshuhn (*favorite chicken*).

1. To the children; children; of the spirit; the wife of the man; the husband of the woman. 2. There were children upon the grass. 3. The villages of the country are very old. 4. Did the girl have many eggs? 5. The scholar's book (*or* the book of the scholar) was not yet old. 6. My father and (my) mother are getting very gray. 7. God is a spirit. 8. We are growing rich.

---

[1] Notice that the gender of compound nouns is usually that of the last element: das Ei and der Korb, but der Eierkorb, *egg-basket;* der Liebling, but das Lieblingshuhn, *favorite hen*, etc.

EXERCISE VI

NEW DECLENSION NOUNS (34–36)

Vocabulary

Der:

Mensch, *human being*, MAN
Ochs, OX
Knabe, *boy, lad*, c. KNAVE
Herr, *gentleman, lord, Mr., master*
Fürst, PRINCE, c. FIRST

Die:

Frau, *woman, Mrs.*
Dame, *lady*
Schwester, SISTER

Die:

Welt, WORLD
Zeit, *time*, c. TIDE
Feder, *pen*, FEATHER
Kindheit, *child*HOOD
Herrin, *mistress*
Freundschaft, FRIENDSHIP
Heuchelei, *hypocrisy*
Schöpfung, *creation*, c. SHAPING
Erde, EARTH
Thüre, DOOR

über, OVER
auch, *also, too*
als, *when, than*

wert, WORTH(*y*)
etwas, *something*
nichts, *nothing*

By joining the Past Participle of a given verb to the forms of haben, *to have;* sein, *to be* (cf. Exercises III, IV, V), we obtain verb phrases corresponding to the English Perfect and Pluperfect tenses: er hatte gesehen, *he had seen;* wir sind gegangen, *we are (have) gone.* The participle is placed at the end of the independent clause.

gemacht,[1] MADE
gelehrt, *taught*
gelernt, LEARNED
geherrscht, *ruled*
geliebt, LOVED

gesehen, SEEN
verlo'ren, *lost*, c. FORLORN
vergan'gen,[2] GONE *by*
gestorben, *died*, c. STARVED
gewesen, *been*

Translate: — 1. Der Fürst und die Fürstin haben über ihr Land geherrscht. 2. Gott der Herr hat die Erde und die Welt gemacht. 3. Hatte der Knabe seine Herrin lieb?

---

[1] The prefix ge- is always unaccented (**162**): ge-macht', ge-lehrt', etc.

[2] Generally speaking, verbs of motion, or change of condition require the auxiliary sein; cf. **168**, 2 and 3.

4. Er hatte die Heuchelei noch nicht gelernt. 5. Die Zeiten der Schöpfung sind noch nicht vergangen. 6. Sind wir noch in unserer Kindheit? 7. Frau N. ist meine Herrin, sie ist der Freundschaft wert. 8. Schon viele Menschen und Tiere sind auf der Erde gewesen. 9. Hatte der Knabe seine Feder verloren? 10. Wir haben den Ochsen auf dem Felde gesehen. 11. Die Dame, die seine Frau wird, ist meine Schwester. 12. Ist unser Onkel gestorben? 13. Die Feder ist die Herrin der Welt. 14. Er hat etwas verloren.

1. Have we seen the lady? 2. Did the children love their father? 3. She is taller than I. 4. What have we learned in our childhood? 5. The gentleman and the lady have been at home. 6. Hypocrisy is a sin. 7. The days of our friendship are past (vorbei').

EXERCISE VII

NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION (36)

Vocabulary

Der:

Bauer, *farmer*, C. BOOR
Nachbar, NEIGHBOR
See,[1] *lake*
Staat, STATE
Vetter, *cousin*
Unterthan, *subject*
Doktor, DOCTOR
Mast, MAST

Der:

Pastor, PASTOR
Professor, PROFESSOR

Das:

Auge, EYE
Ohr, EAR
Bett, BED
Ende, END

lange, LONG, *a long time*
viel, *much*
oder, OR
ihn, HIM
alle, ALL

tief, DEEP
wie, *how, as*
scharf, schärfer, SHARP, etc.
am Ende, *in the end*
was, WHAT

---

[1] die See = SEA, *ocean*.

Inflect the verbs given below with the same endings as haben; cf. Exercise III, p. 102; V, p. 105.

INFINITIVE[1]	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE[1]
mach-en, MAKE	mach-te	ge-mach-t
denk-en, THINK	dach-te	ge-dach-t
glaub-en, *be*LIEVE (with Dat. of person)	glaub-te	ge-glaub-t

DERIVATIVES

denk-en, THINK

- denk-bar, *thinkable*
  - un-denk-bar, *unthinkable*
- Ge-danke, m. *thought*
  - ge-danken-voll, *thoughtful*
  - ge-danken-los, *thoughtless*
- Ge-dächt-nis, n. *memory*
- Andach-t, f. *devotion*
  - an-dächt-ig, *devout(ly)*
  - an-dachts-voll, *reverent(ly)*

Translate: — 1. Es ist undenkbar. 2. Was macht der Nachbar des Bauers (or des Bauern)? 3. Sie machte ihr Bett. 4. Am Ende wird er das Bett machen. 5. Der Herr Pastor war ganz gedankenvoll; auch andächtig. 6. Der Herr Vetter ist nicht lange im Bett gewesen. 7. Sind die Seeen der Welt größer als die See? 8. Werden alle Söhne des Herrn Professors Doktoren? 9. Der Fürst ist gestorben; seine Unterthanen haben ihn noch im Gedächtnis. 10. Die Augen und Ohren der Tiere sind schärfer als die (*those*) der Menschen. 11. Die Unterthanen der Fürsten machen den Staat was er ist. 12. Ich habe ihre (pl. Acc.) Augen noch im Gedächtnis. 13. Wird des Bauers Sohn Bauer oder Pastor?

1. The eyes of animals are very sharp. 2. Their ears too. 3. The neighbor thought of (an, with Acc.) the doctor. 4. Is he still in (the) bed? 5. He will think of his

---

[1] By joining the Infinitive of a given verb to the forms of werden, *become, be* (Ex. IV), the future tense is made (**169**): ich werde machen, *I shall make.* Similarly, if the Past Participle is joined to those forms, we obtain the passive voice (**169**): es wird gemacht, *it is (being) made*, etc.

cousins. 6. What will he do? 7. He thinks of his mother; he will think of his father; he thought of his sister.

EXERCISE VIII

IRREGULAR DECLENSION (43)

Vocabulary

Der:

Buchſtabe, *letter*
Friede, *peace*
Funke, *spark*, c. PUNK, SPUNK
Glaube, *belief, faith*
Gedanke, THOUGHT
Haufe, *crowd, pile*, HEAP
Name, NAME

Der:

Schade, *damage, harm*, c. SCATH*ing*
Wille, WILL
Schmerz, *pain*, c. SMART

Das:

Herz, HEART

es, IT
man, *one, they, people*
ſo viel, *so much, as much.*
geſchloſſen, *locked, concluded*

gut, *kind*
klug, *wise, clever*
durch, THROUGH, *by means of*
wann, WHEN

ich wurd-e, *I became*, etc.
du wurd-eſt, *you became*, etc.
er wurd-e, *he became*, etc.

wir wurd-en, *we became*
ihr wurd-et, *you became*
ſie wurd-en, *they became*

Past part. = geworden, worden (156) (ſein as auxiliary)

DERIVATIVES

buchſtäb-lich, *literally;* nament-lich, *especially;* häuf-ig, *frequently;* herz-lich, *genuinely*, HEARTILY; herz-haft, COUR*ageous;* ſchäd-lich, *harmful;* ſchmerz-lich, *painful;* fried-lich, *peaceable.*

Translate: — 1. Viele glauben es buchſtäblich. 2. Häufig ſind die Menſchen, namentlich die Frauen, herzlich gut. 3. Die Kinder haben die Buchſtaben nicht gelernt. 4. Der Wille des Menſchen iſt nicht nur ein Name. 5. Es ſind nur Gedanken des Friedens in ſeinem Herzen. 6. Durch Schaden wird man klug. 7. Sie haben einen Haufen Gold zu Hauſe. 8. Wie ſchmerzlich es iſt! 9. Die Frauen ſind

häufig ganz herzhaft. 10. Hat ein Kind so viel Willen als Glauben? 11. Wann und wo wurde der Frieden geschlossen? 12. Der Herr Pastor hat den Schülern (die Schüler) den Glauben gelehrt.

1. Peace is being concluded. 2. Peace was (being) concluded. 3. The letters in the book are not very large. 4. Did he have a will? 5. There was still (noch) a spark of faith (**48**, 1) in his heart. 6. We have learned so much already. 7. Are the doors of the house locked?

EXERCISE IX

FOREIGN AND PROPER NOUNS (**45–47**)

Vocabulary

Das:

Gymna'sium, GYMNASIUM; *college*
Stu'dium, STUDY
Evange'lium, *gospel*
Kapital', CAPITAL
Deutschland, *Germany*
Frankreich, FRANCE
Österreich, AUSTRIA

Das:

Ita'li-en, ITALY
Spani-en, SPAIN

Die:

Schweiz,[1] SWITZ*erland*
Türkei, TURKEY

Der:

Januar', JANUARY
Februar', FEBRUARY
März, MARCH
April', APRIL
Mai, MAY
Ju'ni, JUNE

Der:

Ju'li, JULY
August', AUGUST
Septem'ber, SEPTEMBER
Okto'ber, OCTOBER
Novem'ber, NOVEMBER
Dezem'ber, DECEMBER

Karl, CHARLES
Fritz, FRED
Johann, JOHN
Max, MAX
Johannes, JOHN

Marie' *or* Mari'a, MARY
Dorothe'a, DOROTHY
Eva, EVE
Matthä'us, MATTHEW

---

[1] The article is used with feminine names of countries; cf. **27**, 6.

auf, UPon, *at, in*
daß, conj., THAT
nicht mehr, NO MORE, *not any more*
stark, stärker, *strong*, etc.
krank, *sick, ill*
gesund, *well*, c. SOUND

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
studie'r-en, STUDY	studier-te	studier-t,
bring-en, BRING	brach-te	ge=brach-t
kenn-en, KNOW	kann-te	ge=kann-t

DERIVATIVES

kenn=en, KNOW
- Kenn-er, m. *expert*
- Kennt-nis, f. *knowledge, accomplishment*
- be=kenn'-en, *confess*
- er=kenn'-en, *recognize*
- beka'nnt, *known, acquainted*
- Be=kannt-schaft, f. *acquaintance*
- be=kannt-lich, *as is well known*

Translate: — 1. Die Herren Doktoren haben auf dem Gymnasium studiert. 2. Wird das Evangelium Johannis auf den Gymnasien studiert? 3. Es ist sehr warm im Monat Juli, viel wärmer als im Monat Mai oder April. 4. Im Dezember aber ist es[1] kalt. 5. Er kennt die Männer der Schweiz. 6. Der Herr Pastor studiert das Evangelium Matthäi. 7. Hast du der Dorothea Mariens Bibel gebracht? 8. Deutschlands Fürsten erkennen, daß Frankreich groß und stark ist. 9. Marens Kapitalien sind Kenntnis der Welt und Bekanntschaft mit seinem Fürsten. 10. Bekanntlich ist Deutschland stärker als Frankreich; Österreich als Italien. 11. Hat Eva's Schwester viele Kenntnisse? 12. Sie bringt einem Arzte, dem Herrn N. N., einen Korb Eier. 13. Johann kannte Frl. (Fräulein) Marie schon in Deutschland. 14. Der Kranke wird den Doktor nicht mehr kennen; er hat seinen Bruder nicht mehr gekannt.

---

[1] Notice inversion of subject and predicate in the independent sentence, whenever any part of the sentence except the subject (and its modifiers) is placed first (**214**): gestern ging ich, but ich ging gestern; mit vollen Händen nahm er, but er nahm mit vollen Händen. The student will find this rule, simple as it is, one of the most difficult to follow in practice.

1. Eva's sister is very sick at home. 2. Is John's brother getting (cf. foot-note, p. 104) well? 3. The scholars have studied the gospels. 4. We no longer (nicht mehr) knew Mary. 5. What does he bring? What has he brought? What will he bring? 6. Where has Dorothy studied? As is well known, she studied at college (auf dem Gymnasium).

EXERCISE X

PECULIARITIES OF NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS (48-53)

Vocabulary

Der:

Laib (-e),[1] LOAF
Hund (-e), *dog*, HOUND

Die:

Elle (-n), ELL
Stunde (-n), *hour*
Stadt (ᵘe), *city*, c. STEAD
Mark (-), MARK (German coin worth about 24 cents)

Die:

Milch, MILK
Butter, BUTTER

Das:

Fleisch, *meat*, FLESH
Brot (-e), BREAD, *loaf*
Tuch (ᵘer), *cloth*
Pfund (-e), FOUND
Königreich (-e), KING*dom*; cf. *bishop*RIC

zwei, TWO
drei, THREE
vier, FOUR
müde, *weary*
los, *rid*, LOOSE

dankbar, *grateful*, THANK*ful*
ähnlich, *similar*
kauf-en,[2] -te, -t, *buy*
kost-en, -ete, -et, COST
sag-en, -te, -t, SAY

---

[1] For systems of indicating plurals cf. **42**, and foot-note to p. 24.

[2] From this point the principal parts of New or Regular verbs will be indicated simply as in the present instance. The student will then understand that the Infinitive ending -en is to be dropped and -te *or* -ete (**137**, 1) added to make the Preterit. To form the past participle add -t or -et to the stem. All simple verbs (excepting those ending in -ieren) require the prefix ge- in the participial form.

ich geh-e, *I go*
er, sie geh-t, *he, she goes*
wir, sie geh-en, *we, they go*
ich, er ging, *I, he went*
wir, sie ging-en, *we, they went*
Past part. = ge-gan-gen, *gone*

ich komm-e, *I come*
er, es komm-t, *he, it comes*
wir, sie komm-en, *we, they come*
ich, es, sie kam, *I, it, she came*
wir, sie kam-en, *we, they came*
Past part. = ge-komm-en, *come*

DERIVATIVES

Müd-ig-keit, f. *weariness*
Dank-bar-keit, f. THANK*fulness, gratitude*
Ähn-lich-keit, f. *similarity*
Kauf-mann, m. *merchant*, c. CHAPMAN
Kauf-leute, *merchants*
Kauf-laden (ä), m. *store*

Translate: — 1. Meine Schwester Marie hat zwei Ellen Tuch gekauft; sie wird auch drei Pfund Fleisch kaufen. 2. Das Königreich Italien ist nicht so groß wie Deutschland. 3. Zehn Laib Brot kosteten zwei Mark. 4. Der Arzt war eine Stunde (lang) hier im Hause; er kam des Nachts[1] oder während der Nacht. 5. Gingen die Damen auch durch den Wald? 6. Im Monat Mai sind schon alle Bäume grün (*green*). 7. Wurde der Bauer seines Pferdes nicht los? 8. Die Stadt Paris in Frankreich wird immer größer. 9. Eine Bauersfrau brachte meiner Herrin, Frau N., einen Korb Eier und zwei Pfund Butter ins Haus. 10. Kaufmann N. war ein Jahr und vier Monate (lang) in der Schweiz. 11. Die Kaufleute haben den Tagedieb diesseits des Sees gesehen. 12. Er wurde des Gedankens nicht los.

1. We children went through the forest without the dog. 2. A father does not love his child simply (nur) for the sake of the mother. 3. Was she not tired of his friendship? 4. The farmer's wife has brought three pounds of butter. 5. Is the farmer getting rid of his dog? 6. She went towards her husband.

---

[1] Though Nacht is feminine, the adverbial Genitive of it is made analogously with des Tages, des Monats, etc.

EXERCISE XI

PECULIARITIES OF CONSTRUCTIONS CONTINUED (54–56)

Vocabulary

Das:

Geld (-er), *money*
Kleid (-er), *dress*, CLOTH*ing*

Die:

Tante (-n), AUNT
Magd (ᵉe), MAID, *servant*
Straße (-n), STREET
Schule (-n), SCHOOL
Brücke (-n), BRIDGE

Die:

Fami'lie (-n), FAMILY

Der:

Fluß (ᵉsse), *river*, c. FLOOD
Feind (-e), *foe*, FIEND
Wunsch (ᵉe), WISH
Abend (-e), EVEN*ing*
Schuh (-e), SHOE
Tisch (-e), *table*, c. DISC, DESK

da, THERE
gestern, YESTER*day*
heute, *to*-DAY
glücklich, *happy*, LUCKY
leg-en, -te, -t, LAY, *put*, *place*
setz-en, -te, -t, SET, *place*
d. h. = das heißt, *that is to say*, *that is*

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
sitz-en[1], SIT	saß, *sat*	ge-sess-en, *sat*
lieg-en[1], LIE	lag, *lay*	ge-leg-en, *lain*

DERIVATIVES

sitz-en, SIT:
- Sitz, m. *seat*
- be-sitz-en, *possess*
- Be-sitz, m. *possession*
- Be-sitz-er, m. *possessor*
- Be-sitz-tum, n. *wealth*, *possession*

Sess-el, m. *arm-chair*
seß-haft, *resident*, *settled*

Translate: — 1. Gestern abend ging unsere Tante in die Kirche; außer zwei oder drei Männern aber waren nur Frauen und Kinder da. 2. Seit einem Jahre ist der Kaufmann mein Feind geworden. 3. Dem Wunsche der Mutter

[1] Inflect these verbs in the same way as gehen, kommen, in the preceding exercise. To make the verb phrases use the forms of sein as the auxiliary: ich bin gesessen, gelegen, *I have sat*, *lain*, etc. Cf. foot-note 2, p. 107.

gemäß saß das Kind dem Pastor gegenüber. 4. Herr N. samt seiner Familie geht nach der Schweiz. 5. Die Herrin brachte der Magd gestern Schuhe und Kleider. 6. Haben die Knaben den Eltern nicht für die Bücher gedankt? 7. Das Buch lag auf dem Tisch neben der Bibel. 8. Sie legte das Buch auf den Tisch neben die Bibel. 9. Bekanntlich gehen die Schüler täglich längs des Gartens, und über die Brücke ins Dorf. 10. Sie saßen auf einem Sessel, d. h., sie besaßen den Sitz. 11. Der Besitz von Silber und Gold macht nicht glücklich. 12. Seine Besitztümer waren Glauben und Frieden, anstatt Felder und Häuser.

1. The (maid)servant sat under a tree in the garden. 2. A possessor is a man who (der) possesses something. 3. We lay a long time in (the) bed. 4. Have they gone? Has he come? Will he recognize his brother? 5. The daughter resembles her mother greatly (ist . . . sehr ähnlich).

Further exercises on the prepositions will be deferred until the inflection of the adjective has been presented.

EXERCISE XII

ADJECTIVES (57–74)

Vocabulary

kein,[1] *no, not any, n*ONE	reich, RICH	gülden, GILT, *golden*
weise, WISE	lang, LONG	golden, GOLDEN
weiß, WHITE	breit, BROAD	deutsch, *German*, c. DUTCH (=Ger. holländisch)
schwarz, *black*, c. SWARTHY	klein, *small*, CLEAN (*neat*)	englisch, ENGLISH
rot, RED	bunt, *variegated*	
arm, *poor*		

[1] k-ein is inflected like ein, in the singular.

Die:

Rose (-n), ROSE
Farbe (-n), *color*
Blume (-n), *flower*, BLOOM
Li'li-e (-n), LILY

Das:

Paar (-e), PAIR
Stück (-e), *piece*, STICK
Ame'rika, AMERICA

Das:

Schiff (-e), SHIP
Gewand (ⁿer), *garment*
Alter, *age*, OLD *age*

Der:

Bach (ⁿe), *brook*, BECK
Strom (ⁿe), *river*, STREAM
Strand, *shore*, STRAND
(die) Leute, *people*

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
steh-en, STAND	stand	ge-stand-en
geb-en,[1] GIVE	gab	ge-geb-en

es giebt, there is, there are

DERIVATIVES

geb-en, GIVE:
- Geb-er, m. *giver*
- Gab-e, f. *gift*
- Gift, n. *poison*
- ver-geb-en,[2] (w. Dat. of person) *forgive*
- Ver-geb-ung, f. *forgiveness*
- ver-geb-ens, *in vain*, (*given away for nothing*)

Translate: —1. Mein armer alter Vater ist gestern abend gestorben. 2. Eine lange Brücke ging über den breiten Fluß. 3. Des reichen Kaufmanns junge Tochter wurde meine Braut. 4. Wir alle gehen den grauen Tagen des Alters entgegen. 5. Hatte Frau N. kein warmes Herz für ihre Kinder? 6. Ein weiser Mann denkt nicht daß er weise sei (Subj. of indirect statement; cf. **185**). 7. Sind die Bäume des alten Gartens nicht hoch? 8. Hohe Bäume standen neben der langen Brücke. 9. Manch bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand; meine Mutter hat manch gülden (more usual form golden) Gewand. 10. Unsere Magd kaufte ein neues Kleid und ein Paar neue Schuhe. 11. Guter Leute Kinder sind nicht immer gut. 12. Es giebt

[1] Most verbs having the stem-vowel -e change it to i, *or* ie in the 2d and 3d person sing.; cf. **146, 1.**

[2] For accent cf. **162.**

rote und auch weiße Rosen in unseren Gärten. 13. Viele kleinen Bäche machen einen großen Strom. 14. Es[1] kamen zehn deutsche Kaufleute auf dem Schiffe nach Amerika. 15. Giebt es nicht viele undankbare Kinder auf der Welt? 16. Die Farbe vieler Rosen ist ein liebliches Rot.

1. The eggs of the red bird are red also. 2. In vain did[2] my father forgive the (maid) servant. 3. He gave the old dog poison yesterday morning. 4. The handsome piece of cloth is for my sister. 5. There were three little birds upon a green twig. 6. Good, grateful children make their parents happy. 7. All good gifts come from our father, God. 8. The child had many flowers in its little white hands.

EXERCISE XIII

ADJECTIVES CONTINUED (75–83)

Vocabulary

Der:

Amerika'ner, AMERICAN
Franzo'se, FRENCH*man*
Schotte, SCOTCH*man*
Freund, FRIEND
Titel, TITLE

Die:

Freiheit, FREE*dom*
Nation',[3] NATION

gleich, *equal*, LIKE
schlecht, *bad*, c. SLIGHT
französ'isch, FRENCH
amerika'nisch, AMERICAN

Die:

Großmacht (ᵉe), one of the *Great Powers* (only plur. in Eng.)
Gesundheit, *health*
Nachbarschaft, NEIGHBOR*hood*

Das:

Leben, LIFE
Mal, *time* (after ordinals)
Gut (ᵉer), *possessions*, *wealth*

ge=schrieb-en, *written*
leider, *alas*
ebenso . . . als, *just as . . . as*
weit mehr, *far* MORE

---

[1] Es is frequently used as an expletive like our *there*, in *there are*, etc.
[2] See Caution, foot-note, p. 105.
[3] For pronunciation, see -t(h), p. 14.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
nehm-en, *take*, C. NUMB	nahm	ge-nomm-en
sprech-en, SPEAK	sprach	ge-sproch-en

ich nehm-e, *I take* — wir nehm-en, *we take*
du nimm-st, *you take* — ihr nehm-(e)t, *you take*
er nimm-t, *he takes* — sie, Sie[1] nehm-en, *they, you take*

DERIVATIVES

sprech-en, SPEAK
- Sprach-e, f. *language*
- Spruch, m. *saying, verse*
  - Sprüch-wort, n. *proverb*
- ver-sprech-en, *promise*
  - Ver-sprech-en, n. *promise*
  - Ver-sprech-ung, f. *promise*

Translate: — 1. Die amerikanische Nation ist die jüngste Großmacht der Welt. 2. Die höchsten Güter des Lebens sind Gesundheit und Freiheit. 3. Viele höhere amerikanische Schulen sind den besten deutschen nicht gleich. 4. Haben die Amerikaner nicht weit mehr Freiheit als die Deutschen? 5. Seine jüngste Tochter ist ein allerliebstes Mädchen, sie hat viele Freunde hier in der Nachbarschaft. 6. „Frau Holde" ist der Titel eines allerliebsten Büchleins von Rudolf Baumbach. 7. Ich werde es das nächste Mal nach der Schule bringen. 8. Henry Drummond, ein Schotte wie ich glaube, hat ein Buch über „Das größte Ding in der Welt" geschrieben. 9. Etwas Besseres als Liebe und Frieden im Herzen giebt es nicht. 10. Die Guten lieben das Gute, die Schlechten das Schlechte. 11. Die deutsche Sprache ist der englischen weit ähnlicher als der französischen. 12. Die meisten Damen auf dem Schiffe sprachen Französisch. 13. Leider sind die zwei Großmächte, Deutschland und Frankreich, nicht die besten Freunde. 14. Mein Herr, Sie haben dem Manne die Freiheit genommen.

---

[1] The 3d person plural is used both as a singular and plural form in polite address.

1. The lady gave her promise to the youth. 2. He has, alas, written many worse books. 3. The Scotch and the English are better friends than the German and the French. 4. They spoke English just as well as German. 5. The American ladies have more liberty than the German. 6. Her children have not taken anything (not anything = nichts) out of the house. 7. We shall go to Germany next month.

EXERCISE XIV

NUMERALS, etc. (84–92)

Vocabulary[1]

eins,	1	elf,	11	einundzwanzig,	21
zwei,	2	zwölf,	12	zweiundzwanzig,	22
drei,	3	dreizehn,	13	dreißig,	30
vier,	4	vierzehn,	14	vierzig,	40
fünf,	5	fünfzehn,	15	fünfzig,	50
sechs,	6	sechzehn,	16	sechzig,	60
sieben,	7	siebzehn,	17	siebzig,	70
acht,	8	achtzehn,	18	achtzig,	80
neun,	9	neunzehn,	19	neunzig,	90
zehn,	10	zwanzig,	20	hundert,	100

(ein) hundert und eins, etc., 101

den wievielten or wievielsten? *what day of the month?*

einmal, *once;* zwei-, drei-, viermal, etc., *twice, three times, four times,* etc.

einfach, *simple;* zwei-, drei-, vielfach, etc., *two, three, manyfold,* etc.

einerlei, *of one kind* or *sort, indifferent;* zweier-, dreier-, vielerlei, etc., *of two, three, many kinds,* etc.

das erste, zweite, dritte Mal, etc., *the first, second, third time,* etc.

erstens, zweitens, drittens, etc., *in the first, second, third place,* etc.

die Maus, MOUSE	gefangen, *caught*
das Dutzend, DOZEN	einfältig, *simple*
ob, *whether,* IF	krank, *sick,* C. CRANK
wenn, WHEN	spielen, -te, -t, *play*

---

[1] Observe the irregularity in sech-zehn, sieb-zehn, dreiß-ig, sieb-zig.

Translate: — 1. Viermal sieben ist acht und zwanzig. 2. Siebenmal neun ist drei und sechzig. 3. Es ist dem Manne einerlei was wir von ihm denken. 4. Am ersten Mai gingen Hunderte von Menschen in den Wald. 5. Ist es nicht einerlei ob man sagt ein Viertel bis sechs oder drei Viertel auf sechs? 6. Drei Schüler kamen nach der Schule: der erste um drei Viertel auf neun, der zweite um halb zehn und ein dritter um zehn Uhr. 7. Eine einfältige Frau gab anderthalb Dutzend Eier für ebensoviele Rosen; war sie nicht einfältig? 8. Der Herr ist dritthalb Jahre lang krank gewesen. 9. Wenn ich mit meinen Kindern spiele, gehe ich oft auf allen Vieren. 10. „Einmal ist keinmal," sagte die Maus und wurde gefangen. 11. Die Lehrerin hat dreierlei Federn auf dem Tisch. 12. Vielen Menschen geht es schlecht; erstens haben sie kein Geld und zweitens keine Freunde.

1. They came in (zu) twos and threes. 2. One of my dearest friends died (starb) on the 22d of June. 3. The people came at half past three o'clock. 4. What day of the month is it (haben wir) to-day, the 19th or the 20th? 5. I do not care (es ist mir einerlei) whether he goes or not. 6. He will come on the 28th of the month.

EXERCISE XV

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (93–102)

Vocabulary

Der:	Die:
Student' (-en), STUDENT	Sitzung, *session*
Vorsitzer (-), *presiding officer*	Sache (-n), *thing, affair*
Spazier'gang (¨e), *walk*	Sage (-n), *legend*, SAY*ing*
Verstand', *under*STANDING, *intellect*	Ankunft, *arrival*
Weg (-e), WAY	Zukunft, *future*

führ-en, -te, -t, *lead*
such-en, -te, -t, SEEK
be-such-en, -te, -t, *visit*

(sich) freu-en, -te, -t, *rejoice*
(sich) fürcht-en, -ete, -et, *be afraid*

ich kann, *I* CAN
er kann, *he can*
wir, sie, Sie können, *we, they, you can*

ich will, *I* WILL
er will, *he will*
wir, sie, Sie wollen, *we, they, you will*

Translate: — 1. Haben Sie die englische Sprache in der Schule studiert oder von Ihrer Mutter gelernt? 2. Du, mein liebstes Kind, hast viel an (*in*) deinem Vater verloren, er hatte dich sehr lieb. 3. Meinetwegen kann er sagen was er will, ich liebe die Kleine nicht nur ihrer Mutter halber. 4. Er hat den Spaziergang ihretwegen gemacht. 5. Es liegen und lagen viele Studenten unter dem Baume; meinetwegen können sie gehen oder kommen. 6. Er gab ihnen die Rosen, die er mir genommen hatte. 7. Vater und Mutter sind mir heute gestorben. 8. Hat er sich nicht gefreut? freuten wir uns nicht? kannst du dich freuen? wir werden uns freuen. 9. Geh' (Imper.) mir aus dem Weg! 10. Es ist mir von ihm versprochen worden[1]; er wird es mir aber nicht geben. 11. Der Vorsitzer, der die Sitzung führte,[2] hatte viel Verstand, er kannte die Sache. 12. Gedenket (Imper.) mein! ich werde oft an euch denken. 13. Haben Sie sie nicht gesehen? 14. Wir freuten uns daß sie sich so sehr fürchteten. 15. Es war ihnen einerlei ob wir sie besuchten oder nicht.

1. We visited them yesterday. 2. They rejoiced at (über) the affair. 3. Are you not afraid? 4. They knew the old legends; they were known to them. 5. This way

[1] The participle geworden assumes the form worden after another participle; cf. **156**.

[2] The verb in the relative clause is placed last; cf. **215**.

leads to liberty and life. 6. I often[1] visit the neighborhood, it is only a nice walk. 7. According to (**54, 1**) legend many people were afraid of the old gods. 8. Can you not make us a longer visit the next time?

EXERCISE XVI

PRONOUNS CONTINUED (**103–107**)

Vocabulary

Der:

Reichtum (ᵉer), RICH*es*
Fleiß, *diligence*
Finger (–), FINGER
Arm (–e), ARM

Die:

Ehrlichkeit, *honesty*
Freude (–n), *joy*
Vase (–n), VASE
Nichte (–n), NIECE

Das:

Geschenk (–e), *present, gift*
Bild (–er), *picture*

Used only as plurals:

Geschwister, *brothers* and SISTERS
Eltern, *parents*, c. ELDERS

eigen, OWN
ander, OTHER
ehrlich, *honest*
fleißig, diligent, industrious

u. s. w. = und so weiter, *and so forth*
z. B. = zum Beispiel, *for example*
die, *who, whom, which* (N. A. pl. of all genders; N. A. fem. sing.)

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
schneid-en, *cut*	schnitt	ge-schnitt-en
brech-en, BREAK	brach	ge-broch-en
ge-hör-en (with Dat. of pers.), *belong*	ge-hör-te	ge-hör-t

DERIVATIVES

schneiden, *cut*:
- Schnitt, m. *cut*
- Schnitt-er, m. *reaper*
- Schnitt-e, f. *slice*
- Durch-schnitt, m. *average, cross-section*
- durch-schnitt-lich, *on the average*
- Schneid-er, m. *tailor*

Translate: — 1. Liebt die Mutter ihre eignen Kinder nicht weit mehr als die (*those*) andrer Leute? 2. Meiner Eltern

---

[1] Place the adverb first and notice that inversion of subject and predicate takes place as a consequence: oft gehe ich, *often I go;* gestern waren wir, *yesterday we were;* kaum konnten sie, *scarcely could they*, etc.

Reichtümer waren Ehrlichkeit und Fleiß. 3. Die Ankunft unserer Freunde von Deutschland hat uns allen Freude gemacht. 4. Sie brachten uns Bilder, Bücher und andere Sachen. 5. Frl. N. brachte den Ihrigen[1] viele Geschenke, Vasen, Blumen, u. s. w. 6. Will er seinem eigenen Kinde eine Schnitte Brot nehmen? 7. Gieb ihm doch[2] das Seinige. 8. Sind die Kleider, die man ihm gab, sein oder nicht? 9. Gute Männer sagen zu ihren Frauen: Das Meinige ist auch das Deinige; es giebt kein Mein und kein Dein zwischen uns, nur ein Unser. 10. Der Schneider hat sich durchschnittlich einmal den Tag in den Finger geschnitten. 11. Ein sehr großer Hund nahm ihr das Stück Fleisch und die Schnitte Brot vom Tische. 12. Hat der kleine Knabe den Arm gebrochen?

1. He loves his family and his property. 2. Has she cut her hand? 3. We have seen our things in his house. 4. I believe his sister's health is not very good. 5. The presents which she brought belonged to my niece. 6. The money is his, not hers.

EXERCISE XVII

PRONOUNS CONTINUED (108–115)

Vocabulary

der Rock (ᵉe), *coat*
zwar, *it is true, I admit*, etc.
einan'der, ONE ANOTHER
und doch, *and yet, still*
ungefähr, *about*
von ungefähr, *by chance*
ganz und gar, *entirely*
vgl. = verglei'che, *compare*

---

[1] die Meinigen, Seinigen, etc., *my family, his people*, etc., while das Meinige, Seinige, *my property, his property*, etc.

[2] The adverb doch, THOUGH, is frequently simply intensive, as here. Transl. "*Do* give him what belongs to him."

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
ge=denk-en,[1] *remember* (with Gen. of person)	ge=dach-te	ge=dach-t
ver=ste'h-en, *under*STAND	ver=stand	ver=stand-en

(sich) erin'nern, -te, -t, *recall, remember*
bau-en, *build, construct*

DERIVATIVES

ver=steh-en, *under*STAND

- Ver=stand, m. *reason, understanding*
- ver=ständ-ig, *intelligent*
- ver=ständ-lich, *intelligible*
- Ver=ständ-nis, n. *understanding*
- Miß=verständ-nis, n. *misunderstanding*

Translate: — 1. Jener Schneider wird mir den Rock machen; es ist derselbe dessen Sohn Sie kennen. 2. Dieser Menschen Freundschaft ist nicht weit her (*does not amount to much*); zwar sagen sie einander dies und jenes und doch sind sie alte Feinde. 3. Der eine sagte dem andern z. B. etwas über den Schneider und dessen Frau oder über die Frau Professor und deren Familie, u. s. w. 4. Dieser Student hat einen ganzen Haufen deutscher Bücher, er kann dieselben aber nicht verstehen. 5. Gedachte er seiner ist ungefähr dasselbe wie dachte er an ihn; vgl. das Englische der Bibel: *think on these things.* 6. Dies Haus, dieser Garten gehören dem Herrn N., der letztes Jahr ein neues baute. 7. Erinnerst du dich dessen nicht mehr? 8. Ich erinnere mich noch der Frau des Arztes; dieselbe war oft unter den Armen und Kranken mit ihrem Manne. 9. Dies sind meine Eltern, meine Herren; das, meine Geschwister. 10. Oft sagt der Deutsche 'darin' anstatt 'in demselben'; 'darauf' anstatt 'auf demselben'; 'damit' anstatt 'mit dem=[2] oder denselben'; u. s. w. Vgl. Englisches *therein,*

[1] Compound verbs have, of course, the same change of vowel or other variation in the principal parts as the simple ones; cf. Exercise XXIX, p. 152.

[2] When in a series of compounds one member is common to them all, the hyphen, called Bindestrich, is used to indicate the lacking member; hence the present expression reads: demselben oder denselben.

thereupon, etc. 11. Er hat mich ganz und gar nicht verstanden.

1. Those children have no parents. 2. He remembers that this tailor made him a coat. 3. Does this belong to us or to you, gentlemen? 4. I knew this woman very well; she was the one who frequently gave my little ones (use the adjective substantively) roses and other flowers. 5. Let us (Wir wollen) go across the bridge, sir.

EXERCISE XVIII

INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS (116–125)

Vocabulary

Der:

Park (s), PARK
Zaun (¨e), *fence;* c. TOWN
Bettler (–), *beggar*
Held (–en), *hero*
Satz (¨e), *sentence*
Schauspieler (–), *actor*

Die:

Tasche (–n), *pocket*
Allee' (Fr. allée), *walk, avenue*

Das:

Zimmer (–), *room*, c. TIMBER
Thea'ter (–), THEATER

soe'ben, *just now*
jetzt, *now*
genau', *exact(ly)*
fertig, *ready*
folgend,[1] FOLLOW*ing*

eine Woche lang, *for a* WEEK
einen Monat lang, *for a* MONTH, etc.
vor einer Stunde, *an hour since*
vor einem Jahr, *a* YEAR *ago*, etc.
selbst (adv.), *even*

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
les-en, *read*	las	ge-les-en
thu-n, DO, *put*	tha-t	ge-tha-n

fürcht-en, -ete, -et, *fear*, c. FRIGHTEN
er-klä'r-en, -te, -t, *explain, make* CLEAR

---

[1] Participles, both Present and Past, when used adjectively, are inflected like adjectives.

DERIVATIVES

thun, DO	thun-lich, *practicable* That, f. DEED Un-that, f. *misdeed, monstrous deed*	thät-ig, *active* Thät-ig-keit, f. *activity*
From root of fürcht-en, *fear*.	Furcht, f. *fear* furcht-sam, *fearful, timid* furcht-bar, *terrible*	furcht-los, *fearless* Furcht-los-ig-keit, f. *fearlessness*

Translate: — 1. Glauben Sie daß das, was er will, thunlich ist? 2. Gold und Silber habe ich nicht; was ich aber habe, das gebe ich dir. 3. Wer, wessen Hand, hat mir dieses gethan? 4. Wem gehört der neue Rock den der Schneider soeben fertig machte? 5. Was für Leute waren gestern abend im Theater? die, welche immer da sind, oder auch andere? 6. Welch ein Mensch, dieser Karl! Er gab dem Bettler alles was er in der Tasche hatte. 7. Worüber sprachen die Studenten, als der Herr Professor in's Zimmer kam? 8. Sie erklärten einander die folgenden Sätze: Wes ist dies Haus? Wozu wurde dieses gethan? Wer nicht für mich ist, der ist wider mich. 9. Der Student, der fleißig studiert, hat nichts zu fürchten. 10. Solch eine Unthat macht selbst den Helden furchtsam. 11. Die Sache, deren ich mich jetzt nicht mehr genau erinnere, lag zwischen dem Lehrer und seinen älteren Schülern. 12. Die Bücher, woraus wir lasen, gehören Frl. N.'s Eltern, die, wie man mir sagt (*as I am told*), vor einem Jahre sechs Wochen lang in Deutschland waren.

1. The children that played in the park had no fear of (vor) the big dog; did not fear the big dog. 2. The avenues through which we went were very long. 3. He gives me whatever he has. 4. Were those whom you

saw fearless or not? 5. What kind of a man is he? 6. Who has put money into his pocket? 7. To whom does this belong? 8. What were they speaking about?

EXERCISE XIX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (126-130)

Vocabulary

Das:	Der:
Glück, *fortune*, LUCK	Schmied (-e), SMITH
Unglück, *misfortune*	Anfang (ᵉe), *beginning*
schwer, *heavy, difficult*	je, EV*er*
spät, *late*	recht, RIGHT, *real*
wahrscheinlich, *probably*	irgend, *some, any whatever*

Translate: — 1. Der Arzt kommt alle zwei Wochen (or jede andere Woche) zum Kranken. 2. Man sagt, einige der jungen Leute wollen nach Amerika (gehen). 3. Hat er etwas Neues gelesen? 4. Aus nichts wird nichts; Ein jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied; Aller Anfang ist schwer; Heute mir, morgen dir, sind deutsche Sprüchwörter, die ich in meiner Kindheit gelernt habe. 5. Niemand kann alles verstehen. 6. Hat dieser Mensch irgend einem je etwas Gutes gethan? 7. Wir kennen solcher Helden Thaten nur zu gut. 8. Wahrscheinlich gehören diese Bücher irgend einem Studenten. 9. Der Herr gab dem Bettler all das Geld, das er bei sich hatte. 10. Es war ein wenig spät, doch kamen wir noch zur rechten Zeit. 11. Man sagt, er habe (Subj. of ind. discourse) keine Eltern und nur wenige Freunde. 12. Es giebt Mütter, die ihre Kinder nicht lieben; ich erinnere mich einer solchen, es war aber nicht meine (or die mein(ig)e).

1. One cannot always believe him. 2. Probably someone has been here. 3. Several have come to me with their misfortunes (Unglück), and I promised to help them (Dat.) if I could (183, 1). 4. We scholars have learned something new to-day. 5. It does one good to visit one's (seine) friends. 6. Who wills, can; who does not will, cannot.

Derivations and Sound Correspondences[1]

Before studying the verb, it may be well to present a concise and systematic summary of what has been illustrated so far, both as to the formation of derivatives and to the sound correspondences existing between English and German. By keeping these two principles firmly in mind, the student will find himself possessed of a very effective aid in the acquisition of a vocabulary on a rational and scientific basis. True, he will not thereby be relieved of the task of learning a vocabulary, since, in many instances, derivatives have acquired a meaning quite different from what an analysis of their elements would indicate. Again, words etymologically connected frequently differ so widely in their common or usual meaning as to render a simple transfer from the one language into the other quite perilous. At best, cognates afford hints and ties of association, and thereby aid the memory.

---

[1] If the instructor prefers, the consideration of this subject may be omitted for the present, since there is no connection, other than the general one of word formation, between it and the succeeding exercises (XXI, etc.).

In general, words with which the student is already familiar from the preceding lessons have been chosen to illustrate this topic.

The phenomenon of sound correspondences, commonly called Grimm's Law, because first elaborated by the celebrated German linguist Jacob Grimm, is a striking proof, and one that will appeal to the intelligent student, of the close kinship between English and German. The learner ought to realize very early that these two tongues are sister dialects, mere variations of one parent type.

Of course, no attempt is here made to give an exhaustive exposition of this law. We simply give the more helpful and the most common sound correspondences, as they have been illustrated in the vocabularies hitherto given. The further application of Grimm's Law will readily be made in the study of the Old Verbs (cf. **145–157**).

Though for practical reasons the German is placed first in the following table of equivalents, it must be remembered that English really represents the older stage of Germanic speech.

Grimm's Law of Sound Correspondences

As Applied to German and English

The consonants, in which this correspondence or sequence is observable, are classified as Dentals, Labials and Gutturals. It will be seen that the series always remains intact; i.e. dentals remain dentals, labials, labials, and gutturals, gutturals, in passing from one language to the other.

Dental Series

German		English		
d	=	th	—	du : TH*ou*; doch : TH*ough*
t	=	d	—	teuer : D*ear*; Tag : D*ay*
s, ß, ß, ß, z	=	t	—	es : *i*T; zwei : T*wo*; daß : *tha*T

Labial Series

German	English	
b	= f, v	— Weib : *wi*F*e*; Sieb : *sie*V*e*
	= initial b	— beide : B*oth*; breit : B*road*
p	= b	— Rippe : *ri*B
f, pf	= p	— tief : *dee*P; Pfeife : P*i*P*e*; auf : *u*P

Guttural Series

g	= g, gh, y	— gut : G*ood*; Geist : GH*ost*; Pflug : *plou*GH; Tag : *da*Y
k	= k, c	— König : K*ing*; kann : C*an*
ch	= k, gh	— brechen : *brea*K; machen : *ma*K*e*; doch : *thou*GH
h (initial)	= h	— Hand : H*and*; helfen : H*elp*

NOTE. — The combinations sp-, st- are left unchanged; cht appears as English *ght*. Also r, l, m, n and initial s usually correspond to English *r*, *l*, etc.: — spalten, SPL*i*T; Stein, ST*o*N*e*; recht, R*i*GHT; macht, M*i*GHT; Nacht, N*i*GHT; lahm, L*a*M*e*.

FORMATIVE ELEMENTS IN DERIVATIVE NOUNS

The more important nominal suffixes of (concrete) derivative nouns are as follows: —

-chen (cf. Eng. *-kin*, in mani*kin*, nap*kin*, etc.) and

-lein are the two diminutive particles, joined, of course, only to substantives: —

Männ-chen, *little man*, c. MANIKIN	Weib-lein,[1] *little* WIFE
Väter-chen,[1] *dear father*	Töchter-lein, *little* DAUGHTER

-el makes nouns from verb stems, indicating instrument:

Heb-el, *lever*,	from	heben, *lift*, HEAVE
Deck-el, *cover*,	"	decken, *cover*, c. DECK, THATCH
Schläg-el, *mallet*,	"	schlagen, *strike*, c. SLAY

-er (cf. Eng. *-er*), attached to nouns, more often to verb stems, indicates agent, doer, tool, inhabitant: —

Lehr-er, *teacher*	Denk-er, THINKER
Lern-er, LEARNER	Schül-er, SCHOLAR
Bohr-er, *gimlet*, BORER	Neu Yorker, NEW YORKER

[1] Diminutives are frequently used as terms of endearment.

-in, added to masculines, makes corresponding feminines:

Herr-in, *mistress*	Lehrer-in, *lady teacher*
Sänger-in, *songstress*	Berliner-in, *woman, lady from Berlin*, etc.

-ling (cf. Eng. *-ling*, gos*ling*, hire*ling*, strip*ling*), used with verbal and nominal stems, frequently expresses contempt, slight appreciation, immaturity: —

Jähr-ling, YEARLING	Find-ling, FOUNDLING
Jüng-ling, YOUTH	Dichter-ling, *would-be poet*
Lehr-ling, *apprentice*	Däum-ling, *Tom* THUMB

In the formation of (usually) abstract derivatives the following endings are employed: —

-e, added to adjectives, makes the corresponding noun, always, if possible, with modified vowel: —

Güt-e, GOOD*ness*	Größ-e, *size*, GREAT*ness*
Läng-e, LENGTH	Röt-e, RED*ness*
Wärm-e, WARMTH	Hitz-e (heiß), HEAT

-ei[1] (cf. French *-ie*, Eng. *-y*), when attached to verb stems indicates, generally, an oft repeated action; sometimes there is an undercurrent of disapproval or contempt expressed by it: —

Heuchel-ei, *hypocrisy*	Schwätzer-ei, *babbling*
Spieler-ei, *dallying, playing*	Stehler-ei, *pilfering*
Schreiber-ei, SCRIBB*ling*	Großthuer-ei, *braggadocio*

When -ei is added to the names of persons, their business or else the place of business is frequently indicated: —

Bäcker-ei, either the BAKERY or the *baker's business*
Schreiner-ei, either the *workshop of the cabinet-maker*, or *cabinet-making*
Gärtner-ei, GARDEN*ing*

-heit (cf. Eng. *-hood*) appears frequently, especially as a secondary suffix, in the form of -keit. It is joined to adjectives or nouns to express a state or a condition:

---

[1] Always carrying the accent (6).

Kind-heit, *child*HOOD
Gott-heit, GODHEAD
Menſch-heit, *humanity*
Dank-bar-keit, *gratitude*
Thät-ig-keit, *activity*
Furcht-ſam-keit, *timidity*

-nis (cf. Eng. *-ness*) ordinarily joined to verb stems, indicates an action or the result of it; though still other relations are expressed through this particle: —

Kennt-nis, *knowledge*
Bünd-nis, *alliance*
Be-trüb-nis, *trial, tribulation*
Bild-nis, *image*
Finſter-nis, *dark*NESS
Ge-fäng-nis, *prison*

-ſchaft (cf. Eng. *-ship*, Lord*ship*, Lady*ship*, etc.), joined more often to nominal stems, indicates a state or relation; frequently it is used in a collective sense: —

Freund-ſchaft, FRIENDSHIP
Feind-ſchaft, *hostility*
Studenten-ſchaft, *student body*
Mann-ſchaft, *crew*
Herr-ſchaft, *lord, lady*
Liebſchaft, LOVE *affair*

-tum (cf. Eng. *-dom*, king*dom*, Christen*dom*, etc.) expresses dominion, authority, condition or quality: —

König-tum, KINGDOM, KING*ship*
Alter-tum, *antiquity*
Heiden-tum, HEATHENDOM
Be-ſitz-tum, *possessions*
Deutſch-tum, *Germans, their manner, habits*, etc.

-ung (cf. Eng. *-ing*) has frequently the effect of making verbal nouns; attached to noun stems it has a collective sense: —

Verſprech-ung, *promise*
Führ-ung, *guidance*
Be-lehr-ung, *instruction*
Er-neuer-ung, *renovation*
Wald-ung, *forest*
Kleid-ung, CLOTHING

Formative Elements in Derivative Adjectives

The most important adjectival suffixes are as follows: —

-bar (cf. Eng. *bear*ing) is attached to nominal and, more frequently, to verbal stems. It implies possession of the quality indicated by the stem: —

trink-bar, DRINK*able*
eß-bar, EAT*able*
ſicht-bar, *visible*
brenn-bar, *combustible*
frucht-bar, FRUIT*ful*
furcht-bar, FRIGHT*ful*
wunder-bar, WONDER*ful*
dank-bar, THANK*ful*

-(e)n, ern (cf. Eng. *-en*) make adjectives of nouns of materials: —

gold-en, GOLDEN
woll-en, WOOLEN
lein-en, LINEN[1]
ſtein-ern, *of* STONE
ſilber-n, *of* SILVER
hölz-ern, *of wood*

-er[2] is added only to names of cities or countries, making indeclinable adjectives: —

Berlin-er, *of* BERLIN
Pariſ-er, PARISIAN
Schweiz-er, SWISS
Tirol-er, TYROLESE

-haft (cf. Eng. *hav*-ing) implies possession of the quality expressed by the stem, which may be nominal or verbal: —

ſcham-haft, *modest*, lit. SHAME-*having*
leb-haft, LIVE*ly*
ſchmerz-haft, *painful*
herz-haft, *courageous*, c. HEART*y*
meiſter-haft, MASTER*ly*
krank-haft, *sickly*
bos-haft, *malicious*
muſter-haft, *exemplary*

-icht is closely related in meaning to -lich. It expresses similarity, not identity. -art-ig (Art, *kind*), *of the nature of*, can, instead, be joined to the noun from which the adjective is to be made: —

ſtein-icht, ſtein-art-ig, STON*y*, STONE-*like*
woll-icht, woll-art-ig, WOOL*y*, *resembling* WOOL
leder-icht, leder-art-ig, LEATHER*y*, *like* LEATHER

-ig (cf. Eng. *-y*), with meaning similar to -haft, can be attached to noun and verb stems: —

fleiß-ig, *diligent*
herz-ig, *dear*, c. HEART*y*
ſchneid-ig, *cutting*, *sharp*
gläub-ig, *faithful*, *believing*

---

[1] For the substantive form cf. *lin-seed*, *linnet*.

[2] Really a stereotyped Genitive plural; cf. **82**, Note.

haar-ig, HAIRy
wald-ig, *woody*
ver-dächt-ig, *suspicious*
an=dächt-ig, *devout*

-isch (cf. Eng. *-ish*) indicates, usually, source, origin: —

amerikan-isch, AMERICAN
engl-isch, ENGLISH
deut-sch,[1] *German*
ge=bieter-isch, *domineering*
tier-isch, *brutish*
luthe'r-isch, LUTHERAN

-lich (cf. Eng. *-like*, *-ly*) is attached to both noun and verb stems. It indicates the nature or character of an object with reference to that expressed by the stem: —

gött-lich, GOD-LIKE, GODLY
mensch-lich, *human*
herz-lich, HEARTy
väter-lich, FATHERLY
be=weg-lich, *movable*
lesen-lich, *legible*
er=kennt-lich, *recognizable*
häus-lich, *economical*

-los (cf. Eng. *-less*) is attached to nominal stems: —

gott=los, GODLESS
ehr=los, *without honor*
treu=los, *faith*LESS
hilf=los, HELPLESS
heimat=los, HOMELESS
furcht=los, *fear*LESS

-sam (cf. Eng. *-some*, weari*some*, tooth*some*, etc.), attached to nominal and verbal stems, indicates close connection or possession of a given quality: —

ge=walt-sam, *violent*
furcht-sam, *fearful*, *timid*
fried-sam, *peaceable*
bieg-sam, *pliable*
be=dacht-sam, THOUGHT*ful*
schweig-sam, *silent*

PREFIXES COMMON TO BOTH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.[2]

There are a number of prefixes that occur with greater or less frequency in the formation of nouns and adjectives. The most important are: —

---

[1] Cf. *Scotch* for *Scott-ish*, and *Welsh*, derivative of *Wales*.

[2] The particles ge-, miß-, er- (ur-) also occur in verb formations; cf. Exercise XXIX, p. 152.

ge-, though often without any assignable value, generally expresses close relationship, collectivity: —

Ge-schwister, *brother(s)* and SISTER(S)
Ge-spräch, *conversation*
Ge-sträuch, *bushes, clusters*
Ge-spiele, *playmate*
ge-recht, *just,* RIGHT*eous*
ge-sund, *well;* c. SOUND
ge-treu, *faithful,* TRUE
ge-nug, ENOUGH

miß- (cf. Eng. *mis-*) indicates incompleteness, or perversion from the normal:

Miß-verständ-nis, MIS*understanding*
Misse-that, MISDEED
Miß-geschick, *evil fate, ill luck*
Miß-jahr, *hard* YEAR, *crop failure*
miß-günst-ig, *unfavorable, envious*
miß-trau-isch, *dis*TRUST*ful*
miß-mut-ig, *discouraged*

un- (cf. Eng. *un-*) is the negative particle; sometimes it merely expresses a deviation from a given type:

Un-glaube, *disbelief*
Un-friede, *discord, lack of peace*
Un-ehr-lich-keit, *dishonesty*
un-ge-recht, *unjust*
un-ge-sund, *ill,* c. UNSOUND
un-mensch-lich, *inhuman*

Un-wetter, *storm, stormy weather,* i.e. not the ordinary *weather.*
Un-that, *a monstrous deed,* i.e. not an ordinary *deed.*
Un-mensch, *monster,* an inhuman being.
Un-tier, *monster,* i.e. a being worse than bestial.

ur- (cf. Eng. *out*) expresses source, origin, primitiveness:

Ur-welt, *primitive world*
Ur-wald, *primitive forest*
Ur-zeit, *primitive time*
Ur-bild, *prototype*
Ur-groß-vater, *great grandfather*
Ur-sache, *cause, reason*

erz- (cf. Greek. *archi-*, '*superior*') indicates rank, distinction, preëminence:

Erz-bischof, ARCHBISHOP
Erz-engel, ARCHANGEL
Erz-dieb, *expert thief*
erz-dumm, *phenomenally stupid*
erz-dieb-isch, *with all the skill of a professional rogue*

EXERCISE XX

CONJUGATION OF VERBS (131–137)

Vocabulary

hören, HEAR
fordern, *demand*
schulden, *owe*
kaufen, *buy*
bezahlen,[1] *pay, pay for*
wohnen, *dwell, live*
rechnen, *compute*, RECKON
regnen, RAIN
regieren, *rule*, REIGN
versichern, *assure*, usually w. Acc.
(sich) kümmern, *trouble oneself*
beneiden, *envy*

Die:
Straße (–n), STREET
Rechnung (–en), *computation, charges, bill*
Schuld (–en), *guilt, debt*
Versicherung (–en), *assurance*

Der:
Regent' (–en), REGENT, *ruler*
Anzug (¨e), *suit*
Regen (–), RAIN
Schuldner (–), *debtor*
Soldat' (–en), SOLDIER

damals, *at that time*
gerade, *just, straight*
denn, THEN, *pray*
kaum, *scarcely*
genug, ENOUGH
zu, TO, TOO
ja, YES, *indeed*
nein, NO
wie, *as, how*

DERIVATIVES

wohnen, *dwell*
- Ein=wohn-er, m. *inhabitant*
- Wohn=zimmer, n. *sitting-room*
- Wohn=haus, n. *dwelling house*
- Wohn-ung, f. *dwelling, home*
- wohnungs=los, *homeless*
- wohn-haft, *resident, dwelling*

Translate: — 1. Wohnten Ihre Freunde damals nicht in der Friedrichstraße? 2. Ja, sie hatten gerade ein neues Haus gekauft; hatten es aber noch nicht bezahlt, ich versichere Sie. 3. Herr Doktor, Ihre Rechnung ist ganz und gar zu hoch; ich werde Sie nicht bezahlen (. . . sie Ihnen . . .). 4. Was haben Sie denn gethan, daß Sie so viel fordern? 5. Der Regent, der damals das Land regierte, kümmerte

[1] Takes the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing when both are given; otherwise the Accusative only. Cf. our English: *pay a bill, pay a man.*

sich nicht sehr viel um die Einwohner desselben. 6. Wird's (for wird es) regnen? Hat's geregnet? Regnete es gestern? 7. Beneiden Sie den, der in einem besseren und größeren Staate wohnhaft ist als Sie? 8. Wie ich höre, hat er seine Schulden (... den Schneider) noch nicht bezahlt; man glaubt kaum, daß er dieselben (denselben) je bezahle (Subj., cf. **183**). 9. Seine Schuldner geben ihm die Versicherung, daß sie alles, was sie ihm schulden, bezahlen werden. 10. Wir rechneten soeben wie viel es kostete.

1. Do not envy him. 2. I paid my bills to-day and I assure you (that) I had scarcely money enough.[1] 3. Do soldiers envy their generals? 4. Have you computed how much it costs? 5. He demanded of me what I owed him. 6. Assure me that you will buy the house.[1] 7. Do not trouble yourself about (um) me. 8. I had the best assurances that he was paying his debts. 9. Buy that horse, if you have money enough. 10. He has not yet paid his tailor. 11. He has not yet paid the tailor for the suit.

EXERCISE XXI

ANOMALOUS VERBS (**138–144**)

Vocabulary

Der:	Das:
Arbeiter (–), *workman*	Grab (ᵉer), GRAVE
Nächste (–n), c. NEIGHBOR, lit. *nearest one*	Licht (–er), LIGHT
Kranz (ᵉe), *wreath*	Glas (ᵉer), GLASS
Brief (–e), *letter*, c. BRIEF	Liebeszeichen (–), LOVE TOKEN

die Post, POST-*office*

---

[1] Keep in mind that the verb stands last in the dependent clause. In the case of verb phrases (as here) the auxiliary must stand last (**166, 2**).

tot, DEAD	fort, *away*, FORTH	nach Hause, *home*
dahin, *thither*	hell, *bright*	siegeln, SEAL
zuerst, *at first*	ganz gut, *very well*	frankieren, *prepay*

Translate: — 1. Bringe der Kranken ein Glas Wasser. 2. Eine Mutter denkt an ihr totes Kind; sie bringt Blumen und Kränze nach dem kleinen Grabe. Wie oft hat sie dieselben Liebeszeichen schon dahin gebracht! 3. Wenden Sie sich nicht von einer Armen, die niemand kennt. 4. Wollen Sie diesen Brief nach der Post senden? Ja, doch muß er zuerst gesiegelt und frankiert werden, oder Sie können ihn ja auf der Post frankieren. 5. Er will fort(gehen), die andern wollen nicht. 6. Kann er (thun) was die andern können? 7. Darf oder muß er was die andern dürfen oder müssen? 8. Ich weiß es ganz gut, daß er sie nicht kennt. 9. Du sollst Gott und deinen Nächsten lieben. 10. Wir wollen nach Hause jetzt, wenn wir können. 11. Möchten Sie daß die Lichter heller brennten? 12. Ein Mensch sollte immer wissen was man thun darf und thun kann. 13. Er mochte nicht und wollte nicht wissen was er thun solle. 14. Er wollte wissen den wievielten wir heute hätten, und wußte kaum was er davon denken sollte, als ich ihm sagte: Heute haben wir schon den dreißigsten.

1. He was taken home (wurde . . . gebracht). 2. She thought of him and how many flowers he had sent her child. 3. I do not know what I am to think of it (was ich davon denken soll). 4. Do you know him and do you know that he cannot do it? 5. In the first place he could not, and in the second place, he would not; I had to send after another workman, who knew something of the affair. 6. Would you like to live in my little house? 7. Now we must go home; it is already late. 8. Very well; it is late, but I must first prepay this letter.

EXERCISE XXII

THE OLD CONJUGATION (145–150)

Vocabulary

Der:

Fall,[1] FALL, *case*
Lauf, *course*
Rat, *council, counsel*
Gang, *passage, walk*
Spazier'gang, (*pleasure*) *walk*
Fisch (–e), FISH
Advokat' (–en), ADVOCATE, *attorney*

Die:

Ziege (–n), *goat*
Sorge (–n), *care*, c. SORROW

Das:

Wasser, WATER
Haupt (ˢer), HEAD
Nest (–er), NEST

daran',[2] *at it, about to* geschwind, *quick(ly)* wenn, *if*
schmal, *narrow*, c. SMALL gewiß, *certain(ly)* um, *for the purpose of*
viel auf jemand(en) or einen halten, *esteem some one highly*

DERIVATIVES (additional)[3]

Fang, *catch, capture*, c. FANG
Halt, HOLD
Schlaf, SLEEP
Ruf, *reputation, call*
Hieb, *cut, blow*
Hang, *inclination, trend*
Ab=hang, *precipice, declivity*
ab=häng-ig, *dependent*
un=ab=häng-ig, *independent*
Un=ab=häng-ig-keit, *independence*

Translate: — 1. Er läßt das Kind schlafen. 2. Ließ er den Hund nicht fangen? 3. Der Lehrer läßt die Schülerin rufen. 4. Der Herr ließ den Schneider einen neuen Rock machen; haben Sie auch einen machen lassen? 5. Schläfst du? Schlafen Sie? Schlafe; schlafet; schlafen Sie. 6. Wie heißt Ihre Magd, Frau N.? 7. Als man die Kleinen rief, waren sie gerade daran einen Gang nach dem Fluß zu machen, um Fische zu fangen. 8. Der Advokat riet mir, das

---

[1] Monosyllabic derivatives ending in the stem consonant are usually masculine, making their plural in –e (**39**, Class II), often with vowel modification.

[2] Cf. **113**, 2, Note.

[3] These additional lists of derivatives are given in order to familiarize the learner thoroughly with the principles of word-formation and to enable him to construct sentences for himself, with their aid.

Geld nicht zu bezahlen. 9. Wie heißen jene die uns rufen? 10. Als zwei Ziegen über eine schmale Brücke (gehen) wollten, stießen sie gegen einander und — fielen ins Wasser. 11. Könnten Sie mir in diesem Falle keinen guten Rat geben, mein Herr? 12. Gewiß; Sie müssen mehr schlafen, lassen Sie Ihre Sorgen fallen, machen Sie Spaziergänge durch Wald und Feld. 13. Auch Ihr Arzt rät Ihnen dasselbe; ich weiß, er hält sehr viel auf Sie. 14. Kein Haar fällt von unserem Haupte ohne Gottes Willen. 15. Das ist der Lauf der Welt.

1. The children slept for an hour. 2. My brother's name was John; I called him my best friend. 3. Was the nest still hanging[1] on the tree? 4. All of the children ran towards their father, who was broiling the fish which he had caught. 5. Run quick; catch him, if you can. 6. Let her sleep as long as she wishes (so lange sie will).

EXERCISE XXIII

OLD CONJUGATION CONTINUED (151–152)

Vocabulary

Die:

Ladung (-en), LOAD
Tracht (-en), *costume* (from tragen, *carry*, *wear*)
Schlacht (-en), *battle*
Lehre (-n), *teaching*, *precept*
Mauer (-n), *wall*

Das:

Gesicht (-er), *face*
Essen, *meal*, EAT*ing*

Der:

Bäcker (-), *baker*
Schlag (ᵘe), *blow*

nachdem, *after*, *when*
wieder, *again*
wohin',[2] *whither*
woher',[2] *whence*
wenigstens, *at least*
wieviel, *how much*, *what*
zu Tische, *to dinner*, *at table*
bitte, *please*
schlag ... Uhr, ... *o'clock sharp*
loben, *praise*

---

[1] Cf. footnote, p. 105.

[2] hin implies motion *away* from, her, *towards* the speaker.

DERIVATIVES (additional)

Der:	Das:
Sitz, SEAT	Maß, MEAS*ure*
Tritt, *step*, TREAD	Grab, GRAVE
Auf=tritt, *scene*	Gesicht, *face*
Zu=tritt, *admission*	Lag-er, *couch*, *camp*, LAIR
An=tritt, *entrance upon an office*, *a journey*, etc.	

Die:	Die:
Grub-e, *ditch*, *trench*	Fahr-t, *journey*, *voyage*
Wäsch-e, *linen*, WASH*ing*	An=kunf-t, *arrival*
Bitt-e, *request*, *prayer*	Zu=kunf-t, *future*
Gruf-t, *vault*, c. GRAVE	Her=kunf-t, *origin*, etc.

Translate: — 1. Gestern buk unser Bäcker eine Ladung Brot. 2. Diese Frau lässt eine Schweizertracht machen. 3. Der Mensch isst, das Tier aber frisst. 4. Menschen essen, wenigstens sollten sie es thun; Tiere fressen. 5. Der General schlug eine Schlacht. 6. Wen hat die Hausfrau zu Tische geladen? 7. Giebt der Mann dem jungen Hunde Schläge? 8. Hast du vergessen wie geschwind die Kranke genas, nachdem sie wieder essen konnte? 9. Die Mutter liess das Kind gehen, nachdem sie ihm das Gesicht gewaschen hatte. 10. Vergiss deine Eltern nicht. geschehe was wolle (*let happen what will*); tritt ihre Lehren nicht mit Füssen. 11. Einige der Soldaten lagen unter den Bäumen, andere standen hinter der Mauer, wieder andere lagen im Grase. 12. Schlag zwölf Uhr komme ich zum Essen; wieviel hat es soeben geschlagen? 13. Bitte, vergiss das alte Wort nicht: Wenn du gegessen hast und satt bist, sollst du den Herrn, deinen Gott loben.

1. I have begged him to come to me. 2. Please give her this gift. 3. Has the servant washed the child's face? 4. What has (ist) happened to-day? 5. A battle was

fought between the French and the Germans. 6. Whence does he come? Whither does he go? 7. Come; go with me, I am going to carry these roses to the sick woman (use the adjective substantively).

EXERCISE XXIV

OLD CONJUGATION CONTINUED (153–154)

A

Vocabulary[1]

Der:

Schütze (-n), *marksman*
Zugvogel (ⁿ), *birds of passage*
Bogen (ⁿ), BOW
Genuß (ⁿsse), *pleasure, enjoyment*
Flügel (-), *wing*
Wind (-e), WIND
Frost (ⁿe), FROST

Das:

Gemüt (-er), *mind, disposition*
Wasser (-), WATER
Öl (-e), OIL

Die:

Blütenknospe (-n), *bud*
Beute (-n), *prey*, BOOTY

erzähl-en, -te, -t, *relate*, TELL
tadel-n, -te, -t, *reproach, find fault with*
schon längst, *long since*
verdrießlich, *vexatious*
südlich, SOUTH*ern*
hölzern, *wooden*
fett, FAT
damit', *in order that*
beinahe, *almost*

DERIVATIVES (additional)

Der:

Staub, *dust*
Schuß, SHOT
Schluß, *close, conclusion*
Zug, *train, feature*
Schall, *sound*
Verdruß', *vexation*
Verlust', LOSS
Fluß, *river*
Geruch, *smell*

Das:

Gewicht,[2] WEIGHT
Gebot, *command*
Gefecht, FIGHT
Geflecht, *matting, braid*

Die:

Bucht,[2] *bay*, BIGHT
Flucht, FLIGHT
Quelle, *fountain, spring*

---

[1] From this point on it is assumed that the student will recognize the composition of derivatives: hence component parts will no longer be separated.

[2] Collectives in Ge-, irrespective of the final consonant, are usually neuter; the endings -t, -e, -st, -de usually feminine.

Translate: — 1. Man muss nicht vergessen, dass Kinder oft aus Furcht lügen. 2. Was hast du verloren, mein Sohn? ich sehe, dein Gemüt ist sehr bewegt. 3. Vergangene Nacht hat es stark gefroren, so dass die schwellenden Blütenknospen grossen Schaden litten. 4. Nachdem die Thüren geschlossen waren, erzählte er mir von der verdriesslichen Sache. 5. Kannst du nichts riechen? mir scheint, dass etwas brenne. 6. Es verdross ihn, als man ihm nur Wasser in das Glas goss. 7. Die Zugvögel sind schon längst nach südlichen Ländern gezogen. 8. „Das ist meine Beute, was da kreucht und fleugt.“ 9. In alten Zeiten schossen die Schützen mit hölzernen Bögen. 10. Bietet er dem Freunde keinen Genuss? 11. Die Schiffe flogen mit Flügeln des Windes über die See. 12. „Man tadelt den, der seine Thaten wägt.“ 13. Wieviel wiegt jener fette Ochs? 14. Das Licht ist beinahe erloschen; giesse Öl dazu, damit es nicht erlischt.

1. Pour me a glass of water, please. 2. It was very cold last night; many things have suffered from frost. 3. What has the little one (*masc.*) lost? 4. Please let the bird fly, it has suffered enough. 5. I cannot keep silent when he says that I resemble him (ihm gleiche). 6. Shall I tear or cut this piece of cloth? 7. Scholars ought to take pains (sollten sich befleißen) to write nicely.

B

Vocabulary

Der:

Schäfer (-), SHEP*herd*
Dienst (-e), *service*
Tanz (ᵉe), DANCE

Die:

Welle (-n), *wave*
Jugend, YOUTH

Die:

Pflicht (-en), *duty*
Heilige Schrift, SCRIPT*ures*

Das:

Feuer (-), FIRE
Schaf (-e), SHEEP
Lügen-geweb-e (-), *tissue of falsehood*

wag-en, -te, -t, *venture, dare*
blüh-en, -te, -t, *bloom*
ver-blühen, *fade away*

hinweg, *a*WAY
heiß, HOT
schnell, *quick(ly)*

DERIVATIVES (additional)

Der:[1]

Biß, BITE
Fleiß, *diligence*
Riß, *tear, rent*
Schlitz, SLIT
Strich, STROKE
Griff, *hold*, GRIP
Ritt, RIDE
Schritt, *step*
Trieb, *impulse*
Schein, *appearance*

Der:[1]

Schnitt, *cut*
Schnitter, *reaper*
Schneider, *tailor*
Wegweiser, *guidepost*
Vergleich', *comparison*
Reiter, RIDER
Schreiber, SCRIBE, *writer*
Angriff, *attack*
Steig, *foot-bridge*

Translate: — 1. Hat der Hund den Knaben in den Arm gebissen? Ja, er riß ihm ein Stück aus dem Arm. 2. In der Heiligen Schrift steht von den Pflichten der Menschen gegen Gott und gegen einander geschrieben. 3. Wir meiden den Menschen soviel wir können, er ließ sich von seiner Frau scheiden. 4. „Erst wäg's, dann wag's" (proverb). 5. Hat der Schäfer alle seine Schafe geschoren? 6. Dieses Lügengewebe verdroß mich, doch schlich ich mich nicht hinweg, ich wollte nicht weichen. 7. Können Sie nicht länger bleiben? 8. Die Generäle fochten eine heiße Schlacht. 9. „An der Quelle saß der Knabe, Blumen flocht er sich[2] zum Kranz, und er sah sie fortgerissen, treibend in der Wellen

[1] According to what rules are these nouns masculine? What are their plurals?

[2] Dative.

Tanz. Und so fliehen meine Tage, wie die Quelle, rastlos hin! Und so bleichet meine Jugend, wie die Kränze schnell verblühn!"

1. The sister waited on the little brother when he was sick. 2. His mother used to (pflegte) spin and weave very fine cloth 3. Has the fire gone out? Will it go out, do you think? 4. The young lady offered her services to the doctor. 5. The beautiful days of youth have fled, the flowers have faded. 6. We had to make an attack upon the enemy for appearance's sake at least.

EXERCISE XXV

OLD CONJUGATION CONTINUED (155–156)

Vocabulary

Der:

Befehl (-e), *command*
Sinn (-e), *mind*
Krieg (-e), *war*
Erfolg (-e), *success*
Prediger (-), PREACHER
Junge (-n), *lad, boy*
Kerl (-e), *fellow*, CHURL

Die:

Geburt (-en), BIRTH
Ausnahme (-n), *exception*
Werbung (-en), *wooing*

Die:

Regel (-n), *rule*
Kirche (-n), CHURCH
Mühe, *trouble*
Li'ni-e (-n), LINE
Kano'ne (-n), CANNON

Das:

Zeitalter (-), *age*
Recht (-e), *justice*, RIGHT
Streben, STRIV*ing*
Stroh (-e), STRAW

denn, *for, because*
sondern (always after a negative clause), *but*
heutzutage, *nowadays*
die Treppe hinunter, *down (the) stairs*
geheim, *secret*
bleich, *pale*, c. BLEACH

DERIVATIVES (additional)

Bruch, BREAK	Geltung, *validity*
Steinbruch, *quarry*	Hilfe, HELP
Stich, STITCH	Annahme, *assumption*
Diebstahl, THEFT	Treffen,[1] *encounter*
Wurf, *throw*	Verderben, *destruction*

Translate: — 1. Wer hat Ihnen den Befehl dazu gegeben? 2. Es giebt nicht viele Regeln ohne irgend welche (*some*) Ausnahme. 3. Ein neues Zeitalter begann mit der Geburt Jesu Christi. 4. Seine Werbung blieb ohne Erfolg, mußte ohne Erfolg bleiben, denn das Mädchen kannte seinen geheimen Sinn. 5. Gott sprach: Es werde Licht, und es ward Licht. 6. Während des Krieges verbargen viele Leute ihr Geld in die Erde. 7. Du sprichst ein gutes Deutsch. 8. Er wurde Prediger, nicht Arzt. 9. Sie wurden nicht in dem Theater gesehen, sondern in der Kirche. 10. Wovon sprechen die Leute heutzutage am meisten? 11. Der große Washington wurde am 22sten Februar 1732 im Staate Virginien geboren. 12. Wird er schon grau? 13. Wurde der Vogel vom Schützen getroffen? 14. Was gilt's (*What will you wager*), ich kann über den Fluß schwimmen. 15. Schilt mich nicht, nimm was dein ist und drisch nicht immer das alte Stroh. 16. Wie viele Menschen sind doch schon für Freiheit und Recht gestorben! 17. Was ist aus ihrem Streben und ihrer Mühe geworden?

1. Our soldiers threw themselves (sich) upon the enemy, broke his lines and took his cannons. 2. Our neighbor's lads threw stones at (nach) our chickens. 3. The fellow was seen as he ran down the stairs. 4. She turned pale when I told her that her friend had died (gestorben sei).

[1] Infinitives are always neuter.

5. What will become of us, do you know? 6. I want to tell you what has become of him. 7. Did they have to throw the fellow down stairs?

EXERCISE XXVI

OLD CONJUGATION CONTINUED (157)

Vocabulary

Der:

Dom (-e), *cathedral*
Chor'gesang (ᵉe), CHORUS, *anthem*
Trunk (ᵉe), DRINK
Zug(ᵉe), *draught*
Kaffee, COFFEE
Thee, TEA

Die:

Schwindsucht, *consumption*
Wissenschaft, (-en), *science*

Die:

Chokola'de, CHOCOLATE
Schlange (-n), *snake*

Das:

Osterfest(-e), EASTER FESTIVAL
Leben, LIFE
Getränk (-e), *beverage*
Gedränge, *crowd*
Roß (-e), HORSE
Liebchen, *sweetheart*

reich, RICH
herrlich, *splendid*
wohl, *indeed*
traut, *beloved*
behende, *quickly*
geistig, *spiritous*
heilen, -te, -t, HEAL
retten, -ete, -et, *save*
verkaufen, -te, -t, *sell*
vernehmen, *hear*
schürzen, -te, -t, *tuck, make ready*

DERIVATIVES (additional)

Klang, *sound*, CLANK
Sprung, *leap, jump*
Zwang, *compulsion*
Band, *volume*
Fund, FIND
Drang, *crowd*, THRONG

Translate: — 1. Gelingt es ihm reich zu werden? 2. Meine Braut ist an (*of*) der Schwindsucht gestorben; glauben Sie, daß es der Wissenschaft jemals gelingen wird, diese Krankheit zu heilen? 3. Am Osterfeste gingen wir in den Dom, um die herrlichen Chorgesänge zu vernehmen. 4. „Schön[1] Liebchen schürzte, sprang und schwang

---

[1] The grammatical ending is dropped quite frequently in poetry.

sich auf das Roß behende; wohl um den trauten Reiter schlang sie ihre Lilienhände." 5. Nachdem er einen Trunk, einen langen, langen Zug gethan (hatte),[1] begann er, seine Geschichte zu erzählen. 6. „Singe, wem Gesang gegeben." 7. Unser Hund ist von einer Schlange gebissen worden, es gelang mir aber sein Leben zu retten. 8. Was trinken Sie am liebsten, meine Herren? Kaffee, Thee, Chokolade? Geistige Getränke werden hier nicht verkauft. 9. Wir mußten uns durch das Gedränge winden, ehe es uns gelang, unsere Bekannten wieder zu finden.

1. Many Americans do not drink any spirituous liquors (not any, keine). 2. Do you think she sings better now than five years ago? 3. Fido's master wished (wollte) to compel him to jump over the stick, but he did not succeed. 4. "A leap from this bridge makes me free." 5. They were not very successful in getting rich. 6. Science will some day succeed in healing consumption.

EXERCISE XXVII

General Review of Old Conjugation Verbs (145–157); The Verb sein (158)

Translate: — 1. Sie fanden — ihr genießt — wir griffen — er wird gerufen — du wirst gehen — ich stehe.

2. Wir schnitten — sie stand — sie standen — standen sie? — die Pflanze wuchs — die Kinder lagen im Bett.

3. Er stößt — die Mädchen konnten spinnen — der Kranke ist genesen — wir sind gefahren — die Studenten werden laufen — wo sind sie gestanden?

---

[1] In the dependent clause the auxiliary is often omitted.

4. Flochtet ihr ihm einen Kranz? — meide die Sünde wie eine Schlange — lies — liest er? — hat man ihn gefangen? — es schlägt zwei Uhr und wir haben noch nichts zu essen.

5. Er wurde gescholten und aus dem Haus gestoßen — man läßt das Essen auf den Tisch tragen — geben Sie mir ein gesottenes Ei — wir sprachen miteinander darüber — halt! du mußt hier bleiben.

6. Das Kind wurde gewaschen — du siehst, kannst, schlägst — wieviel schlug es soeben? — was ließest du machen? — ich ließ einen neuen Rock machen — hat der Hund dich gebissen?

7. Laß mich gehen, es wird spät — wo saßen die Schüler? — nimm das Pferd und reite nach der Stadt — er wußte nicht was er thun sollte, weiß es jetzt noch nicht — er darf es nicht nehmen.

1. She will grow tall. He is going. We eat. They ate. The baker will bake bread. The bread will be baked.

2. Drink out of that glass, please. What can I do for you? He is obliged to stay in bed (bleiben). Was the bird caught? Are the birds being caught? We are getting old.

3. What was the gentleman's name? They spoke French with each other. He was divorced from his wife. We shall become. We shall be. Has she braided her hair? We have been sick. You all are my friends, be men!

EXERCISE XXVIII

The following exercise on German proverbs is inserted at this place, as affording additional drill in the use of Old verbs, and, incidentally, of the pronoun. The student will do well to commit them to memory.

Vocabulary

Der:	Die:
Hieb (-e), *stroke, cut*	Mühle (-n), MILL
Hochmut, *pride*	Grube (-n), *ditch, pit*
Krug (ᵉe), *pitcher*, CROCK	
Stuhl, (ᵉe), *chair*, STOOL	

fein, FINE	unrecht, *wrong, ill-gotten*	gehorchen, *obey*
endlich, *at last*	je . . . je, *the . . . the*	lenken, *guide*
mitten, *between*, lit., *in the* MIDST	weil, WHILE, *because*	erbauen, *build*
übrig, OVER	hinein, *into it*	verlassen, *forsake*
	behagen, (imp.), *suit*	zerrinnen, *dissipate*

Translate: — 1. Es fällt kein Baum auf einen Hieb. 2. Wer sich auf andere verläßt, der ist verlassen. 3. Es muß biegen oder brechen. 4. Das beste Deutsch ist, das von Herzen geht. 5. Ende gut, alles gut. 6. Die Frau muß selber sein die Magd, soll's gehen im Haus wie's ihr behagt. 7. Wer befehlen will muß gehorchen lernen. 8. Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen. 9. Gottes Mühlen mahlen langsam. 10. Wer andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt selbst hinein. 11. Hab-ich ist ein besserer Vogel als Hätt-ich. 12. Hochmut kommt vor dem Fall. 13. Man kann, was man will. 14. Der Krug geht so lang zu Wasser, bis er bricht. 15. Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt. 16. Reden ist Silber, Schweigen ist Gold. 17. Wem nicht zu raten ist, dem ist nicht zu helfen. 18. Wer dir von andern schlecht spricht, spricht auch andern schlecht von dir. 19. Hilf dir selbst, so hilft dir Gott. 20. Jedem das Seine. 21. Es ist nichts so fein gesponnen, es kommt doch endlich an die Sonnen.[1] 22. Wer steht, sehe daß er nicht falle. 23. Wer auf zwei Stühlen sitzt, fällt oft mitten durch. 24. Wie man's treibt, so geht's. 25. Unrecht[2] Gut gedeiht nicht. 26. Rom ist nicht an einem

[1] Old, inflected form of feminine singular.

[2] Cf. **64**.

Tag erbaut worden. 27. Wer nicht kommt zur rechten Zeit, der muß nehmen was übrig bleibt. 28. Es geschieht nichts Neues unter der Sonne. 29. Den Baum muß man biegen, wenn er jung ist. 30. Je mehr man hat, je mehr man will.

EXERCISE XXIX

COMPOUND VERBS (160–164)

The subject of derivation, more particularly of noun and adjective formation, has already been discussed and illustrated (pp. 129–136). A similar exposition of verb formations is added here.

Speaking broadly, the inseparable prefixes be-, ent-, er-, ge-, miß-, zer-, have the following meanings: —

be- (cf. Eng. *be-*) changes intransitives into transitives, or, if the verb is already transitive, the effect of the prefix is to direct the action of the verb towards another object: ich pflanze Bäume; but er beflanzt ein Feld mit Bäumen. Cf. *the boy spatters mud;* but *he* BE*spatters his trousers; the mother labors at* BE*laboring the boy.*

Prefixed to adjectives or nouns, be- makes verbs: be-freunden, BEFRIEND; be-tauen, BEDEW; be-freien, *set* FREE.

ent- usually implies separation, removal, origin: ent-gehen, *escape;* ent-fernen, *remove;* ent-stehen, *originate;* ent-sagen, *renounce.*

Frequently it indicates the reverse of the action expressed by the primary verb: ent-decken, *discover;* ent-ehren, *dishonor.* Cf. also Eng. *un-cover*, etc.

er- frequently implies the attainment of an object or purpose as the result of the action expressed by the

verb: er-schießen, *shoot (and kill)*; er-jagen, *chase down*; er-beten, *obtain by prayer*, etc. The particle may also imply a passing from a given condition to another: er-müden, *grow weary*; er-kranken, *take sick*; er-wachen, *a*WAKEN.

ge- is rather obscure in its modifying effects; often, indeed, it serves as an intensifying particle: bieten, BID, *offer*; but ge-bieten, *command*. Sometimes it has a distinctly collective sense; ge-rinnen, *run together, curdle*; ge-frieren, *freeze, turn to ice*. More often, however, the simple verbal idea withstands any satisfactory analysis into primary verb and prefix. Cf. raten, *advise*; ge-raten, *succeed, get into*; stehen, *stand*; ge-stehen, *confess*; brauchen, *need*; ge-brauchen, *use up*. Cf. ge-, p. 136.

miß- (cf. Eng. *mis-*) has the same meaning as a verbal prefix, as in nominal derivation; cf. p. 136.

ver- (cf. Eng. *for-*) when prefixed to nominal derivatives usually implies a passing into a given condition: ver-steinern, *turn into stone*; ver-golden, *gild*; vergöttern, *deify*; ver-süßen, *sweeten*; ver-armen, *grow poor*.

Often it is simply an intensifying particle: essen, *eat*; fressen (ver-essen), *devour*; cf. *fret, fret-work*; FOR*lorn*; FOR*give*, etc. Sometimes the effect of the particle is to express the reverse of the meaning of the primary verb: achten, *respect*; ver-achten, *despise*; kaufen, *buy*; ver-kaufen, *sell*. Cf. Eng. *get*, FOR*get*; *bid*, FOR*bid*, etc.

There are still other meanings, the ones enumerated being simply the most tangible, and perhaps the more common.

zer- indicates dissolution, destruction: zer-schlagen, *strike to pieces*; zerfallen, *fall to ruin*; zer-rinnen, *flow away, disappear*, etc.

Vocabulary

stehen, STAND
be ——, *consist, insist*
ge ——, *confess*
ent ——, *originate*
ver ——, *understand*
wider —'—, *oppose*

gehen, GO
be ——, *commit*
ent ——, *escape*
ver ——, *perish, pass*
hinter—'—, *deceive*

fallen, FALL
be ——, *befall*
ent ——, *fall away from*
ge ——, *please*
ver ——, *fall to pieces*
zer ——, *fall to ruins*

setzen, SET
be ——, *occupy*
ent —— (sich), *be horrified*
er ——, *replace*
ver ——, *reply, pawn, transplant*
über—'—, *translate*

lassen, LET
er ——, *remit, issue*
ent ——, *dismiss*
ver ——, *leave, depend*
unter —'—, *desist, keep from*

schlagen, *strike*, C. SLAY
be ——, *shoe, iron*
er ——, *kill*
zer ——, *strike to pieces*
unter —'—, *embezzle*

Der:
Acker (¨), *field*, ACRE
Bergführer (–), *mountain guide*
Bekannte (–n), *acquaintance*
Stock (¨e), STICK, *staff*
Dienst (–e),

Die:
Hoffnung (–en), HOPE
Heimat (–en), HOME
Uhr (–en), *watch, clock*
Lektion (–en), LESSON

nur, *only, just*
eitel, *vain*
sonst, *otherwise, formerly*
edel, *noble*
langsam, *slowly*

Translate: — 1. Der Bauer bepflanzte seine Äcker mit Bäumen. 2. Gestehen Sie es nur, Ihr ganzer Reichtum besteht aus Hoffnungen auf die Zukunft, sonst haben Sie nichts. 3. Der Krug entfiel den Händen der Kleinen als sie über den Bach setzte. 4. Es entging dem Lehrer nicht, daß der Schüler die Lektion nicht übersetzen konnte. 5. Sind diese Stühle schon besetzt? 6. Wollen Sie mir das Pferd beschlagen, Meister Schmied? 7. Der schwere Stock des Bergführers war mit Eisen beschlagen. 8. Die alte Brücke, die über den Fluß führte, war ganz zerfallen, und mußte

durch eine neue ersetzt werden. 9. Er konnte nicht unterlassen uns zu erzählen, wie langsam seine Tage vergingen, jetzt da er von jedermann verlassen war. 10. Die Soldaten verließen ihre Heimat als der Befehl erlassen wurde, gegen den Feind zu Feld zu ziehen. 11. Hat er seine Uhr je versetzen müssen? 12. Unser Knecht hat Geld unterschlagen, deshalb entließen wir ihn; ich muß es gestehen, ich entsetze mich darüber, daß der alte Bekannte solch eine That begehen konnte.

1. You ought to replace the book which you have lost. 2. Does she understand German as well as English? 3. Please dismiss your vain servant; you cannot depend upon her (Sie können sich nicht auf sie verlassen). 4. Did he want to deceive his best friend? 5. That does not please me at all. 6. I shall dismiss you from (aus) my service if you insist upon deceiving your best friends.

EXERCISE XXX

COMPOUND VERBS CONTINUED (160–164)

Vocabulary

setzen, SET
entgegen——, *oppose*
auf ——, *put on*
ab ——, *discharge, dismiss*
nach ——, *pursue*
durch ——, *carry through*
aus ——, *expose*

gehen, GO
an ——, *concern*
auf ——, *open, rise*
mit ——, *go along*
um ——, *associate*
nach ——, *follow up*
durch——, *run away*

machen, MAKE
nach ——, *imitate*
mit ——, *share in*
durch——, *suffer, experience*
ab ——, *arrange*
zu ——, *close*
auf ——, *open*

schlagen, *strike*
durch——, *penetrate*
ab ——, *decrease in price, refuse*
auf ——, *open, increase in price*
vor ——, *propose*
nach ——, *resemble*
zu ——, *close violently*

fallen, FALL		stehen, STAND	
auf	——, *surprise, seem strange*	auf	——, *arise*
ab	——, *become an apostate*	aus	——, *endure* [*stand by*
an	——, *attack*	bei	——, *assist;* cf. Eng.
um	——, *topple over*	gegenüber	——, *oppose*
durch	——, *fail in examination*	über	——, *finish suffering*

Der:	Die:
Norden, NORTH	Sonne, SUN
Dieb (-e), THIEF	Waare (-n), WARE
Tote (-n), DEAD *person*	Krankheit (-en), *sickness*

das Examen, EXAMIN*ation*
das Fenster, *window*

früher, *formerly*	miteinander, *together*
tapfer, *brave*	hinab, *down*
natürlich, *of course*, NATURALLY	einholen, *overtake*

Translate: — 1. Als wir im hohen Norden waren, fiel es uns auf dass die Sonne so früh aufging. 2. Der Mann stand auf, nachdem er seine Sache durchgesetzt hatte. 3. Ist Ihre Frau Mutter schon ausgegangen? 4. Sie gehen doch nicht viel mit diesem Menschen, diesem Bettler, um? Sind Sie schon früher mit ihm umgegangen? 5. Der Feind versuchte sich durchzuschlagen; es gelang ihm aber nicht, wir setzten ihm unsere tapfersten Truppen entgegen. 6. Sind einige Studenten durchgefallen im letzten Examen? 7. Mein Herr, ich habe schon viel durchgemacht, namentlich musste ich den deutsch-französischen Krieg mitmachen, da gab es etwas auszustehen. 8. Seine Pferde gingen durch, wir liefen schnell ihm beizustehen. 9. Er schlug die Thüre zu und sprang die Treppe hinab. 10. Der Tote hat jetzt alles überstanden, während seiner Krankheit musste er aber sehr viel ausstehen. 11. Die Waaren des Kaufmanns schlagen auf. 12. Die ganze Sache war abgemacht, er sollte abgesetzt werden.

1. The police pursued the thief, but, of course, they could not overtake him. 2. Open the doors wide, but close the windows. 3. When the doctor had opened doors and windows, the sick man felt better. 4. Does this surprise you? You open your eyes so wide. 5. The rich man refused the prayer of the poor (schlug den Armen die Bitte ab). 6. When I came down stairs, I met my friend who proposed that we should go to the theater together.

EXERCISE XXXI

VERB PHRASES (165–175)

Vocabulary

Der:	Die:
Erzfeind (-e), ARCH *enemy*	Gefahr (-en), *danger*
Süden, SOUTH	Aussicht (-en), *prospect*
Spätherbst (-e), *late fall*	aufs Land, *into the country*
Prozeß' (-sse), *lawsuit*	im Ausland, *abroad*
unterdessen, *meanwhile*	(sich) entschließen, *decide*
trocken, DRY	erwarten, *expect, await*
heim, HOME	sogleich, *at once*

Translate: — 1. Der Hund hat ein kleines Kind angefallen. 2. Die Mädchen haben große Ähnlichkeit mit ihrer Mutter gehabt. 3. Daß ich meine Eltern herzlich lieb gehabt habe brauche ich dich (also dir) nicht zu versichern. 4. Da ich ihm geschrieben hatte zu mir zu kommen, glaubte ich genug gethan zu haben. 5. Letztes Jahr ist es sehr heiß und trocken gewesen. 6. Sind ihre Bekannten bei Ihnen über Nacht geblieben? 7. Heute Morgen bin ich meinem Erzfeinde begegnet. 8. Es ist den Ärzten nicht gelungen dem Kranken das Leben zu retten. 9. Man sagt mir, daß es den Ärzten nicht gelungen sei, sein Leben zu retten. 10. Es

ist schon Spätherbst; die Zugvögel sind nach dem Süden geflogen. 11. Da wir unterdessen arm geworden waren, ging er natürlich nicht mehr mit uns um. 12. Wird Ihr Advokat den Prozeß sogleich anfangen? Ich glaube er würde ihn beginnen, wenn er bessere Aussichten hätte, denselben zu gewinnen. 13. So viel Geld ist aber schon verloren worden, daß ich mich kaum entschließen kann, den Prozeß wieder aufzunehmen. 14. Seine Ankunft ist schon lange erwartet worden. 15. Seine Schuldner können ihn nicht bezahlen; wenigstens thun sie es nicht. 16. Darf er jetzt nach Hause gehen? 17. Jene Studenten sollten fleißiger studieren; sie sollten sich nicht der Gefahr aussetzen durchzufallen. 18. Der Knabe muß jetzt heim, er darf nicht mehr hier bleiben.

1. May I see the pictures which you bought in Europe? 2. He was greatly (sehr) loved by every one. 3. I have seen him frequently. 4. Can she speak German as well as read it? 5. They have gone to the country. 6. How long has he remained? 7. I asked him how long his uncle would stay abroad. 8. I knew that he was greatly beloved by every one.

EXERCISE XXXII

VERB PHRASES CONTINUED (165–175)

Vocabulary

der Erfolg (-e), *success*
der Bürger (-), *citizen*
die Polizei, POLICE
das Amt (ᵉer), *office*
die Vereinigten Staaten, *the United* STATES

annehmen, *accept*
anbieten, *offer*
umkommen, *perish, die*
besprechen, *discuss*
einstecken, *imprison*
(sich) begeben, *betake oneself, go*
drohen, THREATEN
predigen, PREACH

sicherlich, *assuredly*
unzweifelhaft, *undoubtedly*
wir wollen, etc., *let us*, etc.
bei hellem Tage, *in broad daylight*
hemdärmelig, *in shirt sleeves*
gewaltsamerweise, *violently*

Translate: — 1. Hat die Polizei den Dieb fangen wollen oder nicht? 2. Es scheint mir, daß man es hätte thun können, wenn man nur gewollt hätte. 3. Er würde vielleicht gefangen worden sein, hätte er nicht so viel Geld gehabt. 4. Würde er das schwere Amt angenommen haben (or Hätte er das schwere Amt angenommen), wenn man es ihm angeboten hätte? 5. Ich glaube er hätte sich entschließen können, sich allen Gefahren auszusetzen, wenn nur die Aussicht auf Erfolg besser gewesen wäre. 6. Kein Bürger der Vereinigten Staaten ist je von so vielen geliebt worden wie Abraham Lincoln. 7. Doch glaube ich kaum, daß man ihn so geliebt hätte, wäre er nicht gewaltsamerweise umgekommen. 8. Obgleich heute noch nichts davon gesagt wird, wird es sicherlich besprochen werden. 9. Haben Sie es ihn thun sehen? 10. Hat die Tante ihren Neffen predigen hören? 11. Sie haben lange auf ihn warten müssen, sie fürchteten beinahe, daß ihn ein Unglück befallen hätte. 12. Es wurde mir bekannt gemacht, daß ich mich sogleich in's Ausland begeben müsse, denn die Gefahr drohe, eingesteckt zu werden. 13. Hier durfte der Kranke nicht liegen bleiben.

1. We have been obliged to stay at home. 2. Undoubtedly we shall be seen, when we walk across the street in shirt sleeves. 3. The professor does not believe that the student could have translated the lesson in so short a time. 4. We must not forget that this could not have been done in broad daylight. 5. What should we have been able to do if we had not had more strength than he? Let us be just towards him. 6. Much German is spoken in America (Es wird, etc.).

EXERCISE XXXIII

Some Peculiarities of Use and Construction

(176–186)

Vocabulary

Die:

Luft (ᵘe), *air*
Ernte (-n), *harvest*
Sache (-n), *cause, matter*
Wahrheit (-en), *truth*
Gramma'tik (-en), GRAMMAR
Seele (-n), SOUL

Der:

Mond (-e), MOON
Rat, *advice*

Das:

Geschlecht (-er), *race, sex*
Menschengeschlecht, *human race*

(sich) schicken, *be suitable, proper*
ausfallen, *turn out*
erstaunen, *be astonished*
spiegeln, *mirror, reflect*
bettlägerig, *confined to one's bed*
schlimm, *bad*, c. SLIM
jetzig, *present*
möglich, *possible*
einig, *agreed*
eigen, OWN

Translate: — 1. Es hat schon schlimmere Zeiten gegeben als die jetzige, es wird auch noch bessere geben. 2. Wäre es möglich über das Meer zu schwimmen? 3. Das waren meine Schülerinnen, mein Herr. 4. Er und ich haben schon oft darüber gestritten und sind doch noch nicht einig. 5. Wie lang ist er schon bettlägerig? 6. „In der vergangenen Nacht," das sind des Mondes eigne Worte, und glitt durch Indiens klare Luft, „spiegelte ich mich im Ganges." 7. „Es fürchte die Götter das Menschengeschlecht." 8. „Eines schickt sich nicht für alle. Sehe jeder wie er's treibe, sehe jeder wo er bleibe, und wer steht, daß er nicht falle." 9. „Gott sprach: Es werde Licht, und es ward Licht." 10. Ja, es wäre weit besser gewesen, hätte er dem Rate seiner alten Mutter gefolgt. 11. Wenn es weniger geregnet hätte, wäre die Ernte besser ausgefallen (würde . . . ausgefallen sein). 12. Er gehe mit und schweige. 13. Es wird wohl die

deutsche Grammatik sein, die jener Student so fleißig studiert. 14. Ja, es mag sein; zwar würde es mich erstaunen, denn er sagte mir schon oft, er brauche sie nicht mehr zu studieren.

1. We could not have believed it if he himself had not told us. 2. Would it be possible to swim across the ocean? 3. There are people to whom everything seems possible. 4. They say (man, etc.) that he will not accept the office. 5. If we had had our will in this matter, it would have been finished long ago. 6. There have been good, noble souls in all ages of the world. 7. Let him say whether I have not spoken the truth.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Vocabulary

der Ausgang, *issue, end*
der Narr (-en), *fool*
die Hast, HASTE
(sich) aneignen, *acquire*
(sich) setzen, *seat oneself*
(sich) entschließen, *make up one's mind*
(sich) etwas zu Schulden kommen lassen, *be guilty of something*
(sich) in acht nehmen, *take care*
fremd, *strange, foreign*
höflich, *polite, courteous*
fest, *firm*, FAST
(sich) aufhalten, *stop, delay*
faulenzen, *loaf*
einsteigen, *climb in*
standhalten, *remain firm*
einschlafen, *go to sleep*
harren, *wait*
ziehen, *march, go*

Translate: — 1. Der General befahl den Soldaten gegen den Feind zu ziehen. 2. „Hoffen und Harren macht manchen zum Narren." 3. Bleibe stehen bis ich dich sitzen heiße. 4. Und das soll heißen höflich sein? 5. Er soll schon lange Jahre bettlägerig sein, wie ich höre. 6. Laß den Bettler doch laufen; du kannst ihm gewiß nicht helfen, denn er will nur essen und trinken und faulenzen. 7. Anstatt den Aus-

gang des Prozesses zu erwarten entschlossen wir uns, unser Glück im Auslande zu suchen. 8. Haben Sie sich das neue Haus an der Lindenstraße bauen lassen? 9. Es kam ein Mann in voller Hast gelaufen. 10. Eingestiegen! 11. Stand gehalten! 12. Man erzählt sich, daß er nach Deutschland wolle. 13. Man will sie bei hellem Tage gesehen haben. 14. Ihre Freundschaft soll nicht auf festem Fuß stehen. 15. Herr N. soll eingesteckt worden sein, als er sich in Italien aufhielt. 16. Das sollte mich gar nicht wundern, denn gewiß hat er sich etwas zu Schulden kommen lassen. 17. Wenn er sich nicht sehr in acht nimmt wird er sein ganzes Eigentum verlieren.

1. All aboard! 2. The horses came running across the field. 3. They say he is very fearless (er soll, etc.). 4. The master has taught her to sing and play. 5. Instead of going home we sat down and soon fell asleep. 6. Very likely I shall have her make me a new dress. 7. In order to acquire a foreign language one must have patience and time. 8. Is there anything new to be seen?

EXERCISE XXXV

Vocabulary

Die:

Jahreszeit (-en), *season*
Acht, *care, attention*
Linderung, *relief*
das Herannahen, *approach*

zu Fuß, *afoot*
zu Pferd, *on horseback*
zu Wasser, *by water*
zu Land, *on land*

Die:

Wortfolge, *order of words*
Übung (-en), *lesson, exercise*
Energie, ENERGY
der Angreifer (-), *aggressor*

gern thun, *like to do*
gern bleiben, *like to remain*
gern essen, *like to eat*
gern sprechen, *like to speak*, etc.

(sich) erkälten, *take cold*
(sich) vornehmen, *purpose*
behandeln, *treat*
verschaffen, *afford, procure*
vorstellen, *represent*
abholen, *go to meet*
borgen, BORROW
aufhören, *cease, stop*

nicht willens sein, *be un*WILLING
einigermaßen, *to some extent, somewhat*

Translate: — 1. Mit dem Herannahen der kalten Jahreszeit sollte man besondere acht auf seine Gesundheit geben. 2. Nehmen Sie sich in acht, daß Sie sich nicht erkälten. 3. Wie es auch sei, es läßt sich leider jetzt nicht mehr ändern; gottlob, daß es nicht schlimmer ist! 4. Wir wären sehr gern zu Fuß gegangen, es war aber rein unmöglich. 5. Meine Frau würde gern mitgehen (ginge gern mit), wenn es nur einigermaßen thunlich wäre, aber lieber als sich der großen Gefahr auszusetzen, bleibt sie zu Hause. 6. Zwar wurde der Arzt gerufen, er kam auch, konnte dem Kranken aber keine Linderung verschaffen, da es zu spät war. 7. Nicht sie, sondern er sieht dem Bilde, das vor Ihnen hängt, ähnlich. 8. Allein, es ist dennoch möglich, daß das Bild ihren Vater vorstellt. 9. Seitdem wir näher mit einander umgehen, ist er mir viel lieber geworden. 10. Das muß ich doch am besten wissen, ich, der ich sonst wenige Freunde habe. 11. Gestern wurde mir gesagt, daß sie ganz und gar von ihm abhängig sei; daher ist kaum zu erwarten, daß sie auch ihre Geschwister versorge. 12. Auf einmal fiel mir ein, daß ich mir vorgenommen hatte, ihn aufs beste zu behandeln und jetzt hatte ich vergessen, ihn nur abzuholen.

1. They are my very best friends, yet I should not like to borrow money of them. 2. They would lend it to me but, I fear, not very willingly. 3. Not we, but you, are the aggressors. 4. He wanted to learn German, but he was unwilling to put time and energy into it (daran).

5. Hence he did not succeed, of course. 6. Before we stop studying the grammar we must have an exercise on the order of words in the German sentence.

EXERCISE XXXVI

ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SENTENCE (211–215)

Translate: — I. Normal order: — 1. Der Mensch ist sterblich. 2. Die Dame setzte ihren Hut auf. 3. Wir wissen, Kinder machen ihren Eltern alles nach. 4. Der alte Schneider hat mir einen Rock machen wollen. 5. Mein kleiner Sohn, der jüngste, hat mir heute eine Blume auf den Tisch gelegt. 6. Die Blätter der Bäume sind schon so früh gelb geworden.

II. Inverted order: — 1. Giebt sie der Mutter etwas Schönes? 2. Gieb dem Armen etwas zu essen. 3. Vorgestern schon erwarteten wir seine Ankunft. 4. Beneideten Sie uns doch nicht so sehr unseres Reichtums wegen! 5. „Hätte ich nur meine Lektion," sagte er, „so würde ich mich nicht fürchten."

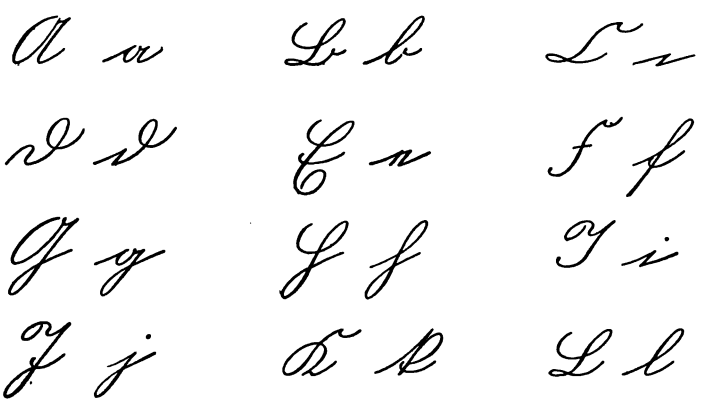
III. Transposed order: — 1. Der mir das Leben gab. 2. Dessen Wille uns bekannt war. 3. Dem wir zu dienen schuldig sind. 4. Als ich ihn eine Woche lang erwartet hatte. 5. Da man den Verlorenen nicht mehr finden konnte. 6. Daß du es ihm schon längst hättest sagen sollen. 7. Nachdem er seine Familie jahrelang nicht mehr gesehen hatte.

All three orders: — 1. Als ich ihr sagte, was für eine große Freude es uns allen gewesen sei, daß sie uns die herrlichen Blumen, die nur in ihrem Garten wüchsen, gegeben haben, versetzte sie: „Ich wollte meinen alten Freun-

den, deren ich mich noch immer in Dankbarkeit und Liebe erinnere, gern diesen kleinen Gefallen thun." 2. Ich habe schon oft gesehen, daß, nachdem amerikanische Studenten einige Monate lang Deutsch studiert haben, sie schon viel davon kennen und verstehen: ohne die Grammatik aber wäre das Studium einer fremden Sprache beinahe hoffnungslos. 3. „Hilf dir selbst, so hilft dir Gott," ist ein altes Sprichwort, das noch immer wahr ist, und auch wahr bleiben wird.

GERMAN SCRIPT

As German Script is still quite largely used, especially in private correspondence, the alphabet and a few connected sentences are subjoined. Notice carefully the difference between *w* and *ü*, *u* and *ü*, *g* and *y*, *L* and *L*.



M m N n O o

P p Q q R r

S s (ſ final) ß = sz T t

U u V v W w

X x Y y Z z

Ä ä Ö ö Ü ü Äu äu

Willst du immer weiter schweifen?
Sieh, das Gute liegt so nah.
Lerne nur das Glück ergreifen,
Denn das Glück ist immer da.

Goethe.

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY

Old and Anomalous verbs and such other peculiarities as seemed to require special mention are referred to their appropriate sections in the Grammar.

A.

a, an, ein (25)
about, um (50), ungefähr
aboard, eingestiegen (192)
abroad, im or ins Ausland
accept, an=nehmen (155)
according to, nach (54, 1)
acquire, (sich) an=eignen
across, über (56)
affair, Sache (-n), *f.*
age, Alter, Zeitalter (-), *n.*
aggressor, Angreifer (-), *m.*
ago, her, vorbei; years —, vor . . . Jahren
alas, leider
all, all, ganz (126, 2)
already, schon
also, auch
always, immer
American, Amerikaner (-), *m.*, -in (-nen), *f.*
American, amerikanisch
and, und
animal, Tier (-e), *n.*
any, (irgend) welcher (116); -thing (irgend) etwas; not —, kein (130)
are, cf. be (158)
as, da, als (209, 3)
ask, fragen
assurance, Versicherung (-en), *f.*
assure, versichern, with dat. and acc.
at, in, zu, auf
avenue, Allee' (-n), *f.*

B.

bake, backen (151)
baker, Bäcker (-), *m.*
battle, Schlacht (-en), *f.*
be, sein (158); in passive phrases, werden (156). — able, können (142); — afraid of, sich fürchten vor; — obliged, müssen (142); — wont, pflegen
beautiful, schön
become, werden (156)
bed, Bett (-en), *n.* (40)
been, cf. be (158)
before, bevor, ehe
beg, betteln
believe, glauben, with dat. of person
belong, gehören, with dat. of person
best, best; very —, allerbest (79)
better, besser
between, zwischen (56)
big, groß
bill, Rechnung (-en), *f.*
bird, Vogel (¨), *m.*
book, Buch (¨er), *n.*
borrow, borgen

braid, flechten (153)
branch, Zweig (-e), *m.*; Ast (ᵉe), *m.*
bread, Brot (-e), *n.*
break, brechen (155)
bridge, Brücke (-n), *f.*
bring, bringen (141)
broil, braten, (150)
brother, Bruder (ᵉ), *m.*
but, aber (206, 1, 2)
butter, Butter, *f.*
buy, kaufen
by, von, bei (54)

C.

call, nennen (140); heißen (150)
can, können (142)
cannon, Kano'ne (-n), *f.*
carry, tragen (151)
catch, fangen (150)
chicken, Huhn (ᵉer), *n.*
child, Kind (-er), *n.*; -hood, Kindheit, *f.*
clock, Uhr (-en), *f.*; o'clock, Uhr (90)
close, zu-machen
cloth, Tuch (ᵉer), *n.*
coat, Rock (ᵉe), *m.*
cold, kalt
college, Gymnasium (-ien), *n.* (45)
come, kommen (152)
conclude, schließen (153)
compel, zwingen (157)
compute, rechnen, berechnen
cost, kosten
country, Land (ᵉer), *n.*; (in)to the —, aufs Land
course, Weg (-e), *m.*; of —, natürlich
cousin (male), Vetter (-n), *m.*
cut, schneiden (154)

D.

daily, täglich
day, Tag (-e), *m.*; -light, -es-licht; in broad —, bei hellem -e
daughter, Tochter (ᵉ), *f.*
dear, lieb, teuer
debts, Schulden, *f.*
deceive, hinterge'hen (150); betrügen (153)
demand (of), fordern (von)
depend (on), sich verlassen (auf) (150)
die, sterben (155)
dismiss, ent-lassen (150)
divorce, scheiden (154)
do, thun (143); — (as auxiliary), cf. note, Ex. III and foot-note 2, p. 53
doctor, Doktor (-en), *m.* (39, V)
dog, Hund (-e), *m.*
door, Thüre (-n), *f.*
Dorothy, Dorothe'a
down, nieder, hin-unter, her-unter; — stairs, die Treppe hin-, herunter.
dress, Kleid (-er), *n.*
drink, trinken (157)

E.

each, jeder (126); — other, einander
ear, Ohr (-en), *n.* (40)
eat, essen (152)
egg, Ei (-er), *n.*
enemy, Feind (-e), *m.*
energy, Energie, *f.*
English, englisch
Englishman, Engländer (-), *m.*
enough, genug (203)
entire(ly), ganz, ganz und gar

envy, be=neiden
Europe, Europa, *n.*
Eve, Eva
every, jeder (126); — one, -mann (126); — thing, alles
exercise, Übung (-en), *f.*
eye, Auge (-n), *n.* (40)

F.

face, Ge=sicht (-er), *n.*
fade, ver=blühen
faith, Glaube(n), *m.* (43, 1)
fall, fallen (150); — asleep, ein=schlafen
family, Fami'lie (-n), *f.*; die Meinigen, Seinigen, etc. Cf. p. 124, foot-note 1
farmer, Bauer (-n), *m.* (39, V)
father, Vater (ᵘ), *m.*
fear, Furcht, *f.*; -less, -los
fear, fürchten, sich — vor (w. dat.)
feel, fühlen
fellow, Kerl (-e), *m*
field, Feld (-er), *u.*
fight, schlagen (151), fechten (153)
fine, fein, zart
finish, voll=enden
fire, Feuer (-), *n.*
fish, Fisch (-e), *m.*
five, fünf
flee, fliehen (153)
flower, Blume (-n), *f.*
fly, fliegen (153)
for, für, (50); — the sake of, wegen, um . . . willen (52)
foreign, fremd
forest, Wald (ᵘer), m.; Waldung (-en), *f.*
forget, ver=gessen (152)
forgive, ver=geben (152)
forsake, ver=lassen (150)
free, frei
French, französisch; -man, Franzose (-n), *m.*
frequently, oft, häufig
friend, Freund (-e), *m.* -ship, -schaft (-en), *f.*
from, von (54)
frost, Frost (ᵘe), *m.*

G.

garden, Garten (ᵘ), *m.*
general, General' (ᵘe), *m.*
gentleman, Herr (-en), *m.* (43, 3); (in address) mein Herr
German, deutsch (used both as adject. and subst.)
get (turn, become), werden (156); — rid of, los — (with gen.)
gift, Gabe (-n), *f.*, Geschenk (-e), *n.*
girl, Mädchen (-), *n.*
give, geben (152)
glass, Glas (ᵘer), *n.*
go, gehen (150); — out (of a fire), er=löschen (153)
God, Gott (ᵘer), *m.*
gold, Gold, *n.*
good, gut, wohl
gospel, Evangelium (-ien), *n.* (45)
grammar, Gramma'tik (-en), *f.*
grass, Gras (ᵘer), *n.*
grateful, dankbar
gray, grau
great, groß; -ly, sehr
green, grün
grow, werden (156), wachsen (151)

H.

hair, Haar (-e), *n.*
half, halb; — past, etc. (90, 2)
hand, Hand (ᵘe), *f.*; -some, hübsch
hang, hangen (150)

happen, ge-schehen, impers. (152)
happy, glücklich
hard, schwer, hart
have, haben (139); — done, made, etc., thun, machen lassen (150), cf. also 187, note; — to, müssen (142)
he, er (93)
health, Gesundheit, *f.*
heart, Herz (-en), *n.* (43, 2)
help, helfen (155)
hence, des-halb, des-wegen
her, ihr (104)
here, hier
his, sein (103)
house, heim, nach Hause; at —, zu Hause
horse, Pferd (-e), *n.*
hour, Stunde (-n), *f.;* for an —, eine — lang
house, Haus (ˣer), *n.*
how, wie; -ever, jedoch; — much, wie viel
husband, Mann (ˣer), *m.*
hypocrisy, Heuchelei *f.* (6, 1)

I.

I, ich; — do not care, es ist mir einerlei. Cf. Ex. XIV.
if, wenn, ob
in, in (56); — order, um (188); -stead, anstatt (52); — vain, vergebens
it, es (93)

J.

John, Johann
jump, springen (157)
June, Juni, *m.*
just, gerecht; as — as, eben-so — als

K.

keep, be-halten (150); — silent, schweigen (154)
kind, Sorte(-n), *f.;* what —, was für (ein) (119)
know, kennen (140), wissen (142)
known, be-kannt; as is well —, be-kannt-lich

L.

lad, Junge (-n), *m.*
lady, Dame (-n), *f;* young —, Fräulein (-), *n.*
language, Sprache (-n), *f.*
large, groß
last, letzt, vergangen
late, spät
lead, führen
leap, Sprung (ˣe), *m.*
learn, lernen
legend, Sage (-n), *f.*
lend, leihen (154)
lesson, Aufgabe (-n), *f.*
let, lassen (150); — him, er soll; — us, wir wollen
letter, Buchstabe (-n), *m*
liberty, Freiheit (-en), *f.*
lie, liegen (152)
life, Leben (-), *n.*
like to (do, etc.), gern (thun, etc.). Cf. Ex. XXXV.
line, Linie (-n), *f.*
liquor, Getränk (-e), *n.*
little, klein; — one (man, woman, child, etc.), use the adjective simply.
lock, schließen (153)
long, lang; — ago, schon längst; as — as, so — als

lose, ver-lieren (153)
love, lieben; Liebe, *f.* (noun)

M.

maid-(servant), Magd (ᵉe), *f.*
make, machen
man, Mann (ᵉer), *m.*
many, viele, manche (126); — things, vieles
Mary, Marie'
master, Herr (-en), *m.* (43, 3); Meister (-), *m.*
matter, Sache (-n), *f.*
may, dürfen, mögen (142)
meet, begegnen (with dat. of pers.), treffen (155)
misfortune, Unglück, *n.*
miss, Frl. = Fräulein (-), *n.*
money, Geld (-er), *n.*
month, Monat (-e), *m.*
more, mehr
morning, Morgen (-), *m.*
mother, Mutter (ᵉ), *f.*
much, viel
must, müssen (142)
my, mein (104)

N.

name, Name (-n), *m.* (43, 1)
neighbor, Nachbar (-n), *m.* (39, V); -hood, -schaft (-en), *f.*
nest, Nest (-er), *n.*
new, neu
next, nächst
niece, Nichte (-n), *f.*
nice(ly), hübsch
night, Nacht (ᵉe), *f.*
nine, neun; -teen, -zehn
no, nein, kein; — longer, nicht länger, nicht mehr
noble, edel (62)
not, nicht; — any, kein (130, 126); — at all, gar nicht
nothing, nichts (83)
now, jetzt

O.

ocean, Ocean (-e), *m.* (11 under c), Meer (-e), *n.*
of, von, aus, vor (54, 56); — course, natürlich
offer, bieten (153)
office, Amt (ᵉer), *n.*
often, oft, häufig
old, alt
on, an, auf (56)
one, einer, etc. (84); as indef. pron., man (126); — another, ein-ander
only, nur
open, auf-machen, öffnen
or, oder
order, Ordnung, *f.*; — of words, Wortfolge, *f.*; in —, um (188)
other, ander
ought, sollte, etc. (142)
our, unser (103)
out of, aus (54)
over, über (56); -take, ein-holen
owe, schulden (with dat. of pers.)

P.

pale, bleich
parents, Eltern
park, Park (-e), *m.*
past, vorbei
patience, Geduld, *f.*
pay, pay for, bezahlen
peace, Friede(n), *m.* (43)
people, Leute, man (126)
picture, Bild (-er), *n.*
piece, Stück (-e), *n.* Cf. 48, 1, 2

play, spielen
please, ge=fallen (150); if you —, bitte
(pleasure) walk, Spaziergang (ᵉe), *m.*
pocket, Tasche (-n), *f.*
poison, Gift (-e), *n.*
police, Polizei, *f.*
poor, arm
possess, be=sitzen (152); -or, Be=sitzer (-), *m.*
possible, möglich
pound, Pfund (-e), *n.* Cf. 48, 1, 2
pour, ein=schenken
present, Ge=schenk (-e), *n.*
probably, wahrscheinlich
professor, Professor (-en), *m.*
promise, Versprechen (-), *n.*; verb, ver=sprechen (155)
property, Eigentum, *n.*; das Meinige, Seinige, etc. Cp. p. 124, foot-note 1
propose, vor=schlagen (151)
pursue, ver=folgen
put, legen, setzen, thun (143)

Q.

quick(ly), schnell

R.

read, lesen (152)
recognize, er=kennen (140)
red, rot
refuse, ab=schlagen (151), with dat. of pers.
rejoice (sich) freuen
remain, b=leiben (154)
remember (sich) erinnern, with gen. obj. (cf. 53, 3)
replace, er=setzen
resemble, gleichen (154), ähnlich sehen (152), ähnlich sein (158), both with dat. of obj.
rich, reich
rid, los (53, 2)
rose, Rose (-n) *f.*
run, springen (157), rennen (140)

S.

say, sagen
scarcely, kaum
scholar, Schüler (-), *m.*
Scotchman, Schottländer (-), *m.*
see, sehen (152)
seem, scheinen (154)
send, senden (140), schicken
sentence, Satz (ᵉe), *m.*
servant, Diener (-) *m.*; -in (-nen), *f.*
service, Dienst (-e), *m.*
several, einige (126)
shall (aux. of future), werden (156); — (ought), sollen (142)
sharp, scharf
she, sie (93)
shirtsleeve, Hemdärmel (-), *m.*; in —s, hemdärmelig
short, kurz
sick, krank; the — one (man, woman, child, etc.), use the adjective simply
silent, still; keep —, schweigen (154)
simply, nur
sin, Sünde (-n), *f.*
sing, singen (157)
sir, (mein) Herr (-en), *m.* Cf. Herr
sister, Schwester (-n), *f.*
sit, sitzen (152)
skin, Haut (ᵉe,) *f.*

sleep, schlafen (150)
so, so
soil, Boden (ⁿ), *m.*
soldier, Soldat (-en), *m.*
someone, jemand (126)
something, etwas (83)
soon, bald
soul, Seele (-n), *f.*, Geist (-er), *m.*
spark, Funke (-n), *m.* (43)
speak, sprechen (155)
spin, spinnen (155)
spirit, Geist (-er), *m.*; -ous, -ig
stay, bleiben (154)
stick, Stock (ⁿe), *m.*
still (yet), noch
stone, Stein (-e), *m.*
stop, auf-hören
street, Straße (-n), *f.*
strength, Kraft (ⁿe), *f.*
student, Stude'nt (-en), *m.*
study, studieren (137, 3); noun, Studium (-ien), *n.* (45)
succeed, ge-lingen (157), (impersonal with dat.)
suffer, leiden (154)
suit (of clothes), Anzug (ⁿe), *m.*
surprise, auf-fallen (150)
swim, schwimmen (155)

T.

tailor, Schneider (-), *m.*
take, nehmen (155); — pains, (sich) befleißen (154)
tall, groß
teach, lehren; -er, Lehrer (-), *m.*
tear, zer-rei'ßen (154)
tell, sagen, er-zählen
than, als (81)
that, *conj.*, daß; dem. pron. jener, etc. (108); rel. pron. der, welcher, etc. (120)
theater, Thea'ter (-), *n.*
their, ihr (103)
there, da; — is, were, etc.; es giebt, gab, etc.
thief, Dieb (-e), *m.*
thing, Ding (-e), *n.*
think, denken (141)
this, dieser (108)
those, jene (108)
three, drei
through, durch (50)
throw, werfen (155)
time, Zeit (-en), *f.* in so short a —, in so kurzer —; for a long —, auf lange —
tired, müde (53, 2)
to, zu, nach (54, 2); -day, heute; -gether, zusammen, miteinander
too, zu, auch (also)
towards, gegen (50)
translate, über-setz'en (162, 3)
tree, Baum (ⁿe), *m.*
trouble oneself (about), sich bekümmern (um), with acc.
truth, Wahrheit (-en), *f.*
turn (become), werden (156)
twentieth, zwanzigst (88)
twenty, zwanzig; — second, zwei-und-st; — eighth, achtund-st
twig, Zweig (-e), *m.*
two, zwei

U.

uncle, Onkel (-), *m.*
under, unter (56); -stand, ver-stehen (152)
undoubtedly, unzweifelhaft
unwilling, nicht willens
upon, auf (56)
use (be wont), pflegen

V.

vain, eitel (62); in —, vergebens
very, sehr; — best, allerbest (79); — likely, wahrscheinlich; — well, sehr wohl, sehr gut
village, Dorf (ˢer), *n.*
visit, be-suchen

W.

wait, warten; — on, ver-pflegen, with acc. object
walk, gehen (150)
want (desire), wollen (142)
warm, warm
wash, waschen (151)
water, Wasser (-), *n.*
way, Weg (-e), *m.*
we, wir (93)
weave, weben (153)
well (*adj.*), ge-sund; *adv.* wohl, gut; — to-do, wohlhabend; as — as, sowohl . . . als
what, was (116, 120); — about, worüber (117); — day of the month? den wievielten? — kind, was für ein (119); -ever, was nur immer, was nur irgend
when, wenn, wann, als (209, 209, 3)
whence, woher'
where, wo
whether, ob
which, was (116); rel. pron. das, welches (120)
white, weiß
whither, wo-hin'
who, wer (116); rel. pr. der, das, die (120)
wide, weit, breit
wife, Weib (-er), *n.*
will, wollen (142); noun, Wille (-n), *m.* (43); as aux. of future, werden (156); -ingly, gern (Ex. XXXV)
window, Fenster (-), *n.*
wish, wünschen, wollen (142); noun, Wunsch (ˢe), *m.*
with, mit (54); -out, ohne (50, 188)
woman, Frau (-en), *f.*, Weib (-er), *n.*
world, Welt (-en), *f.*
work, Arbeit (-en), *f.* -man, -er (-), *m.*
worse, schlimmer
write, schreiben (154)

Y.

ye, you, ihr (93, 96)
year, Jahr (-e), *n.*; -s ago, vor -en
yesterday, gestern
yet, doch, dennoch; not —, noch nicht
you, du, ihr, Sie (95–97)
youth, Jugend, *f.*, Jüngling (-e), *m.*

GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Anomalous forms of Genitive singular are referred to their appropriate sections.

A.

Abend (-e), *m.* evening.
aber, but, however.
abfallen, become an apostate.
Abhang (ᵉe), *m.* slope, declivity.
abhängig, dependent.
abholen, go to meet (some one).
abmachen, agree to.
absetzen, depose.
abschlagen, refuse, become lower (in price).
Acht, *f.* care, attention; **sich in acht nehmen,** be on one's guard.
acht, eight.
achtzehn, eighteen.
achtzig, eighty.
Acker (ᵉ), *m.* field, acre.
Advokat' (-en), *m.* attorney, advocate.
ähnlich, similar.
Ähnlichkeit, *f.* similarity.
Allee' (-n), *f.* avenue, walk.
als, as, when, than.
alt, old.
Alter, *n.* age, old age.
Amerika, *n.* America.
Amerika'ner, *m.* American.
amerika'nisch (*adj.*), American.
Amt (ᵉer), *n.* office, duty.
an, on, by, near, at.
anbieten, offer.
Andacht, *f.* reverence, devotion.
andachtsvoll, devout(ly).
andächtig, devout(ly).
ander, other.
aneignen (sich), appropriate.
Anfang (ᵉe), *m.* commencement, beginning.
anfangen, begin.
angehen (*w. Acc.*), concern.
angreifen, attack.
ankommen, arrive.
Ankunft (ᵉe), *f.* arrival.
annehmen, accept, assume.
ansehen, look at.
Antritt, *m.* entrance (upon an office, *etc.*).
Anzug (ᵉe), *m.* suit (of clothes).
arbeiten, work.
Arbeiter (-), *m.* workman.
arm, poor.
Arm (-e), *m.* arm.
Arzt (ᵉe), *m.* physician.
Ast (ᵉe), *m.* branch.
auch, also, too.
auf, upon, on.
auffallen, seem odd, strange.
Aufgabe (-n), *f.* task, lesson.
aufgehen, open, rise (of sun).
aufhalten (sich), stop, delay.
aufhören, stop, cease.
aufschlagen, rise (in price), open (violently).

aufsetzen, put on (as of hat).
aufstehen, rise.
Auftritt, *m.* scene.
Auge (-n), *n.* eye (40).
aus, out, out of.
Ausgang (ᵉe), *m.* exit, way out.
aushalten, endure.
auskleiden, undress.
Ausland, *n.* (*no plural*), foreign land; **im —**, abroad.
Ausnahme (-n), *f.* exception.
aussehen, appear, look.
aussetzen, expose.
Aussicht (-en), *f.* prospect.
ausstehen, endure, bear.
ausziehen, undress, move.

B.

Bach (ᵉe), *m.* brook.
Bäcker (-), *m.* baker.
bauen, build.
Bauer (-n), *m.* farmer, peasant (39 V).
Baum (ᵉe), *m.* tree.
befallen, befall.
Befehl (-e), *m.* command.
befehlen (sich), take one's leave, go.
begeben (sich *w.* nach, zu, *etc.*), go, proceed.
begehen, commit.
behandeln, treat.
behende, quick(ly).
beide, both.
Bein (-e), *n.* leg, bone.
beinahe, almost.
beistehen, stand by, assist.
bekannt, acquainted.
bekanntlich, as is well known.
Bekanntschaft, *f.* acquaintance.
bekennen, confess.
bekommen, get, receive.
beneiden, envy.
bepflanzen, plant, plant to.
Bergführer (-), *m.* mountain guide.
beschlagen, shoe (of horses), tip with iron.
besetzen, occupy.
Besitz, *m.* possession.
besitzen, possess.
Besitzer, *m.* possessor.
Besitztum (ᵉer), *n.* possession.
besprechen, discuss.
bestehen, consist.
besuchen, visit.
betagt, aged.
beten, pray.
Bett (-en), *n.* bed (40 V).
bettlägerig, confined to one's bed.
Bettler (-), *m.* beggar.
Beute (-n), *f.* booty.
bewegen, move.
bezahlen, pay.
Bild (-er), *n.* picture, image.
bitten, pray, beg.
Blatt (ᵉer), *n.* leaf.
blau, blue.
bleich, pale.
Blume (-n), *f.* flower.
blühen, bloom.
Blütenknospe (-n), *f.* flower bud.
Boden (ᵉ), *m.* floor, soil, bottom.
Bogen (ᵉ), *m.* bow, arch.
borgen, borrow.
Braut (ᵉe), *f.* bride.
brechen, break.
breit, broad.
Brief (-e), *m.* letter.
bringen, bring.
Brot (-e), *n.* bread, loaf.
Bruder (ᵉ), *m.* brother.
Brücke (-n), *f.* bridge.

Buch (ᵉer), *n.* book.
Buchstabe (-n), *m.* letter (of alphabet) (43).
buchstäblich, literally.
bunt, variegated.
Bürger (-), *m.* citizen.
Butter (-), *f.* butter.

C.

Chokola'de, *f.* chocolate.
Chorgesang (ᵉe), *m.* chorus, anthem.

D.

da, then, there, since.
dahin, thither.
damals, at that time.
Dame (-n), *f.* lady.
damit, in order that.
dankbar, grateful.
Dankbarkeit, *f.* gratitude.
dann, then.
daran, thereon, thereby.
d. h. = **das heißt,** that is.
daß (*conj.*), that.
denkbar, thinkable.
denken, think.
denn, for.
deshalb, for that reason.
deutlich, plain(ly).
deutsch (*adj.*), German.
Deutsch (*indecl.*), *n.* German language; cf. 82.
Deutschland, *n.* Germany.
dick, thick.
Dieb (-e), *m.* thief.
dienen, serve.
Dienst (-e), *m.* service.
Dom (-e), *m.* cathedral.
Dorf (ᵉer), *n.* village.
dort, there.
drei, three.
dreierlei, of three kinds.
dreifach, threefold.
dreimal, three times.
dreißig, thirty.
dreizehn, thirteen.
drittens, thirdly.
drohen, threaten.
durchfallen, fail in examination.
durchgehen, run away.
durchmachen, experience, undergo.
durchsetzen, carry through.
durchschlagen, penetrate.
Durchschnitt (-e), *m.* average, cross-section.
durchschnittlich, on the average.
Dutzend (-e), *n.* dozen.

E.

eben, just.
ebenso . . . als, as . . . as.
Ecke (-n), *f.* corner.
edel, noble.
ehrlich, honest.
Ei (-er), *n.* egg.
eigen, own.
einander, one another.
einerlei, of one sort, indifferent.
einfach, simple.
einfältig, simple.
einholen, overtake.
einig, agreed, united.
einigermaßen, to some extent.
einmal, once.
eins, one.
einschlafen, go to sleep.
einstecken, imprison.
einsteigen, mount, enter, get aboard.
Einwohner, *m.* inhabitant.

einzig, sole, unique.
eitel, vain.
elf, eleven.
Elle (-n), *f.* ell, yard.
Eltern (*in plural only*), parents.
empor', up.
Energie', *f.* energy.
Ende (-n), *n.* end (40 V); **am —,** at last.
endlich, finally.
Engländer (-), *m.* Englishman.
entfalten, unfold.
entgehen, escape.
entgegensetzen, oppose.
entlassen, dismiss.
entsetzen (sich), be horrified.
entschließen (sich), decide, conclude.
entstehen, originate, arise.
erbauen, build, edify.
Erde, *f.* earth.
Erfolg (-e), *m.* success, result.
erheben (sich), arise.
erinnern (sich), remember.
erkälten (sich), take cold.
erkennen, recognize.
erklären, explain.
erlassen, remit.
Ernte (-n), *f.* harvest.
erschlagen, slay.
erschrecken, frighten.
ersetzen, make restitution.
erstaunen, be astonished.
erstens, in the first place, firstly.
erwarten, await.
erzählen, relate.
Erzfeind (-e), *m.* arch enemy.
es giebt, there is, there are.
Essen, *n.* eating, meal.
etwas, something.
Evange'lium (-ien), *n.* gospel (45, 1).
Examen (-), *n.* examination.

F.

Fahrt (-en), *f.* journey.
Fall (ᵘe), *m.* fall, case.
Fami'lie (-n), *f.* family.
Fang (ᵘe), *m.* catch.
Farbe (-n), *f.* color.
faulenzen, loaf.
Feder (-n), *f.* pen, feather.
Feind (-e), *m.* enemy.
Feld (-er), *n.* field.
Fenster (-), *n.* window.
fertig, ready.
fest, firm.
fett, fat.
Feuer (-), *n.* fire.
Fleisch, *n.* flesh.
Fleiß, *m.* diligence.
fleißig, diligent(ly).
Fluß (ᵘe), *m.* river.
Flügel (-), *m.* wing.
folgend, following.
fordern, demand.
fort, away.
frankieren, prepay.
Frankreich, *n.* France.
Franzo'se (-n), *m.* Frenchman.
französisch (*adj.*), French.
Frau (-en), *f.* Mrs., woman.
Fräulein (-), *n.* young lady, Miss.
frei, free.
Freiheit (-en), *f.* freedom.
fremd, strange.
freuen (sich), rejoice.
Freude (-n), *f.* joy.
Freund (-e), *m.* friend.
Freundschaft (-en), *f.* friendship.
Friede (-n), *m.* peace (43).
friedlich, peaceable.
früh, early.
früher, formerly.

führen, lead.
fünf, five.
fünfzehn, fifteen.
fünfzig, fifty.
Funke (-n), *m.* spark (43).
Furcht (*no plural*), *f.* fear.
furchtlos, fearless.
Furchtlosigkeit, *f.* fearlessness.
furchtsam, timid, fearful.
fürchten (sich), fear, dread, be afraid.
Fürst (-en), *m.* prince.
Fuß (ᵘe), *m.* foot; **zu** —, afoot.

G.

Gabe (-n), *f.* gift.
Gang (ᵘe), *m.* walk, passage.
ganz, whole, entire; — **und gar**, out and out.
Garten (ᵘ), *m.* garden.
Gebäude (-), *n.* structure, building, (40, 1).
Geber (-), *m.* giver.
Geburt (-en), *f.* birth.
Gedanke (-n), *m.* thought (40).
gedankenlos, thoughtless.
gedankenvoll, thoughtful.
Gedächtnis, *n.* memory (34, 4).
gedenken, be mindful of.
Gedränge (-), *n.* throng, crowd (40, 1).
Gefahr (-en), *f.* danger.
gefallen (*w. Dat. of person*), please.
geheim, secret.
gehorchen, obey.
gehören, belong.
Geist (-er), *m.* spirit.
geistig, spiritous.
Geld (-er), *n.* money.
Gemüt (-er), *n.* mind, disposition.
genau, exact(ly).
genug, enough.
Genuß (ᵘe), *m.* enjoyment.
gerade, just (then).
gern, willingly; *w. verbs* = to like to, *etc.*
Geschenk (-e), *n.* present.
Geschlecht (-er), *n.* sex, race.
geschwind, quick(ly).
Geschwister, brother(s) and sister(s).
Gesicht (-er), *n.* face.
gestehen, confess.
gestern, yesterday.
gesund, sound, healthy.
Gesundheit, *f.* health.
Getränk (-e), *n.* beverage, drink.
Gewalt, *f.* power, force.
gewaltsam, by force.
Gewand (ᵘer), *n.* garment.
Glaube (-n), *m.* faith, belief (40).
gleich, at once, alike.
Glück, *n.* luck, fortune.
glücklich, fortunate.
Gott (ᵘer), *m.* God.
Grab (ᵘer), *n.* grave.
Gramma'tik (-en), *f.* grammar.
grau, gray.
groß, large, tall.
Großmacht, *f.* one of the great (political) powers.
Grube (-n), *f.* hole, ditch.
Gruft (ᵘe), *f.* grave.
gülden, gilt, golden.
Gymna'sium (-ien), *n.* gymnasium, college (45).

H.

Haar (-e), *n.* hair.
Habe, *f.* possession.
Halt, *m.* hold, stop.
Hang, *m.* inclination.
harren, wait (a long while).

Haufe (-n), *m.* heap, crowd (40).
häufig, frequently.
Haupt (ᵘer), *n.* head.
Haus (ᵘer), *n.* house; **nach Hause,** homeward, house; **zu Hause,** at home.
Haut (ᵘe), *f.* skin.
heilen, hea'.
heim, homeward.
Heimat (-en), *f.* home.
heiß, hot.
Held (-en), *m.* hero.
hell, bright.
Hemd (-en), *n.* shirt (40 V).
hemdärmelig, in shirt sleeves.
herab, down.
Herannahen, *n.* approach.
Herbst (-e), *m.* autumn.
herein (*adv.*), in.
Herkunft, *f.* origin.
Herr (-en), *m.* master, Mr. (43, 3).
Herrin, *f.* mistress.
herrlich, glorious, splendid.
Herz (-en), *n.* heart (43, 2).
herzhaft, courageous.
herzlich, hearty.
Heuchelei (-en), *f.* hypocrasy.
heute, to-day.
heutzutage, nowadays.
Hieb (-e), *m.* cut, stroke.
hier, here.
hinab', down.
hinein' (*adv.*), in.
hintergehen, deceive.
hinweg, away.
hoch, high.
Hochmut, *m.* pride.
höchstens, at most.
Hoffnung (-en), *f.* hope.
höflich, courteous.
Holz (ᵘer), *n.* wood.
hölzern, wooden.
hübsch, pretty.
Huhn (ᵘer), *n.* chicken.
Hund (-e), *m.* dog.
hundert, hundred.

J.

in, in.
indem, while.
Inhaber (-), *m.* occupant, possessor.
irgend (ein, etwas, *etc.*), someone, something.
Ita'lien, *n.* Italy.

J.

ja, yes.
Jahr (-e), *n.* year; **vor einem —,** a year ago.
Jahreszeit (-en), *f.* season.
je, ever; **— . . . desto** *or* **je,** the . . . the.
jetzt, now.
jetzig (*adj.*), present.
Jugend, *f* youth, the time of youth.
Junge (-n), *m.* lad, youth.
Jüngling (-e), *m.* young man.

K.

Kaffee, *m.* coffee.
kalt, cold.
Kamerad (-en), *m.* comrad.
Kanone (-n), *f.* cannon.
kaufen, buy.
Kaufladen (ᵘ), *m.* store.
Kaufleute (*pl.*), merchants.
Kaufmann, *m.* merchant.
kaum, scarcely.
kennen, know.
Kenner, *m.* expert.
Kenntnis, *f.* knowledge.

Kerl (-e), *m.* churl, fellow.
Kind (-er), *n.* child.
Kindheit, *f.* childhood.
Kirche (-n), *f.* church.
Kleid (-er), *n.* dress.
klein, small.
Kloster (¨), *n.* cloister.
klug, clever.
Knabe (-n), *m.* boy.
kommen, come.
König (-e), *m.* king.
Königreich, *n.* kingdom.
Korb (¨e), *m.* basket.
kosten, cost.
krank, sick.
Krankheit (-en), *f.* sickness.
Kranz (¨e), *m.* wreath.
Krieg (-e), *m.* war.
Krug (¨e), *m.* pitcher.
kümmern (sich) über, worry over.

L.

Ladung (-en), *f.* load.
Laib (-e), *m.* loaf.
Land (¨er), *n.* land; **aufs —**, into the country; **zu —**, on land.
Landstädtchen (-), *n.* provincial town.
lang, long.
langsam, slow.
Lauf, *m.* course.
leben, live.
legen, lay.
Lehre (-n), *f.* doctrine.
lehren, teach.
Lehrer, *m.* teacher.
leider, alas.
Lektion (-en), *f.* lesson.
lenken, guide.
Leute (*plural*), people.
Licht (-er), *n.* light.
lieb, dear.
Liebe, *f.* love.
Liebchen (-), *n.* sweetheart.
Liebeszeichen (-), *n.* token of love.
lieblich, lovely.
Liebling, *m.* darling.
lieblos, loveless.
liebreich, amiable.
Linie (-n), *f.* line.
Lilie (-n), *f.* lily.
Linderung (-en), *f.* help, amelioration.
Linnen (-), *n.* linen.
loben, praise.
los, loose.
losschlagen, dispose of, sell (at an auction).
Luft (¨e), *f.* air.
Lügengewebe (-), *n.* tissue of falsehood (40 I).

M.

machen, make.
Mädchen (-), *n.* girl.
Magd (¨e), *f.* maid-servant.
Mal (*no plural form*), *n.* time (as once, twice, *etc.*).
man, one, they, people.
Mann (¨er), *m.* man.
Mark (*no plural form*), *f.* a German coin worth about 24 cents.
Maß (-e), *n.* measure.
Mast (-en), *m.* mast (39, 5).
Mauer (-), *f.* wall.
Maus (¨e), *f.* mouse.
Meister (-), *m.* master.
Mensch (-en), *m.* man, human being.
Milch, *f.* milk.
Mißverständnis (-se), *n.* misunderstanding (34, 4).

miteinander, with one another.
mitten, between, in the midst.
mitgehen, go along.
mitmachen, take part in.
möglich, possible.
Monat (-e), *m.* month; **einen — lang,** for a month.
monatlich, monthly.
Morgen (-), *m.* morning.
müde, weary.
Müdigkeit, *f.* weariness.
Mühe (-n), *f.* trouble, great labor.
Mutter (ᵘ), *f.* mother.

N.

Nachbar (-n), *m.* neighbor (39, V).
Nachbarschaft (-en), *f.* neighborhood.
nachdem (*conj.*), when, after.
nachmachen, imitate.
nachschlagen, resemble, take after.
nachsetzen (*w. Dat. obj.*), pursue.
Nacht (ᵘe), *f.* night.
Name (-n), *m.* name (43).
namentlich, especially.
Narr (-en), *m.* fool.
natürlich, of course, naturally.
nehmen, take.
neu, new.
neun, nine.
neunzehn, nineteen.
neunzig, ninety.
nicht, not.
nicht mehr, no more, no longer.
Nichte (-n), *f.* niece.
nichts, nothing.
nicken, nod.
noch, yet, still.
noch nicht, not yet.
Norden, *m.* North.
nur, only.

O.

ob, whether, if.
obgleich, although.
Ochs (-en), *m.* ox.
oder, or.
offen, open.
Ohr (-en), *n.* ear (40 V).
Öl (-e), *n.* oil.
Onkel (-), *m.* uncle.
Osterfest (-e), *n.* Easter.
Österreich, *n.* Austria.

P.

Paar (-e), *n.* pair.
Pferd (-e), *n.* horse; **zu —,** on horseback.
Pflicht (-en), *f.* duty.
Pfund (-e), *n.* pound (*but see* § 49).
Polizei, *f.* police.
Post, *f. or* **Postamt** (ᵘer), *n.* post-office.
prächtig, splendid, elegant.
predigen, preach.
Prozeß (-e), *m.* law-suit, case.

R.

Rat (ᵘe), *m.* counsel, counsellor.
rechnen, compute.
Rechnung (-en), *f.* bill, charges.
recht, right.
Recht, *n.* justice, law.
Regel (-n), *f.* rule.
Regen (-), *m.* rain.
Regent' (-en), *m.* regent.
regieren, rule, command.
regnen, rain.
reich, rich.
Reichtum (ᵘer), *m.* riches.

retten, save, rescue.
Rock (ᵉe), *m.* coat, skirt.
Roß (-e), *n.* horse.
Ruf, *m.* call, reputation.
rund, round.

S.

Sache (-n), *f.* thing, affair.
Sage (-n), *f.* legend.
sagen, say.
Satz (ᵉe), *m.* sentence.
Schaden (-), *m.* harm (43).
schädlich, harmful.
Schaf (-e), *n.* sheep.
Schäfer (-), *m.* shepherd.
scharf, sharp.
Schauspieler (-), *m.* actor.
schicken (sich, *impers.*), be proper.
Schiff (-e), *n.* ship.
Schlacht (-en), *f.* battle.
Schlaf, *m.* sleep.
Schlag (ᵉe), *m.* blow, stroke.
Schlange (-n), *f.* snake.
schlecht, bad.
schlimm, bad.
Schluß (ᵉe), *m.* conclusion.
schmal, narrow.
Schmerz (-en), *m.* pain (43, 2).
schmerzlich, painful.
Schmied (-e), *m.* smith.
schneiden, cut.
Schneider (-), *m.* taylor.
schnell, quick(ly).
Schnitt (-e), *m.* cut.
Schnitte (-n), *f.* slice.
Schnitter (-), *m.* reaper.
schon, already.
schon längst, long ago.
Schöpfung (-en), *f.* creation.
Schotte (-n), *m.* Scotchman.
Schrift (-en), *f.* writing, Scriptures.
Schuld (-en), *f.* guilt, debt; **sich etwas zu -en kommen lassen**, be guilty of something.
schulden, owe.
schuldig, guilty.
Schuldner, *m.* debtor.
Schule (-n), *f.* school.
Schüler (-), *m.* scholar.
schürzen (sich), tuck up, *lit.* put on an apron.
Schuß (ᵉe), *m.* shot.
Schütze (-n), *m.* marksman.
schwarz, black.
Schweiz, *f.* Switzerland.
schwer, heavy.
Schwester (-n), *f.* sister.
Schwindsucht, *f.* consumption.
sechs, six.
sechzehn, sixteen.
sechzig, sixty.
See (-n), *m.* lake (39 V).
Seele (-n), *f.* soul.
sehr, very.
selbst (*adv.*), even.
Sessel (-), *m.* armchair.
seßhaft, settled, residing.
setzen (sich), seat oneself.
sicherlich, assuredly.
sieben, seven.
siebzehn, seventeen.
siebzig, seventy.
siegeln, seal.
Silber, *n.* silver.
Sinn (-e), *m.* sense, mind.
Sitz (-e), *m.* seat.
sitzen, sit.
Sitzung (-en), *f.* session.
soeben, just now.
sogleich, at once.
Sohn (ᵉe), *m.* son.
Soldat' (-en), *m.* soldier.

sondern, but (*after negatives*).
Sonne (-n), *f.* sun.
sonst, otherwise.
Sorge (-n), *f.* care, worry.
Spanien, *n.* Spain.
spät, late.
Spätherbst (-e), *m.* late autumn.
spazieren, promenade, take a walk.
spielen, play.
Spielzeug, *n.* plaything.
Sprache (-en), *f.* language.
sprechen, speak.
Spruch (ᵉe), *m.* verse.
Sprüchwort (-e, ᵉer), *n.* proverb.
Staat (-en), *m.* state (39 V).
Stadt (ᵉe), *f.* city.
standhalten, remain firm.
stark, strong.
Staub, *m.* dust.
stehen, stand.
Stock (ᵉe), *m.* stick, staff.
Strahl (-en), *m.* beam (39 V).
Straße (-n), *f.* street.
streben, strive.
Stroh (-e), *n.* straw.
Strom (ᵉe), *m.* stream.
Stück (-e), *n.* piece.
Student' (-en), *m.* student.
studieren, study.
Studium (-ien), *m.* study (45).
Stuhl (ᵉe), *m.* chair.
Stunde (-n), *f.* hour; **vor einer —**, an hour ago.
suchen, seek.
Süden, *m.* South.
südlich, south.

T.

tadeln, blame.
Tag (-e), *m.* day; **bei hellem -e**, in broad daylight.
Tagedieb (-e), *m.* rascal, rogue.
täglich, daily.
Tante (-n), *f.* aunt.
Tanz (ᵉe), *m.* dance.
tanzen, dance.
tapfer, brave.
Tasche (-n), *f.* pocket.
That (-en), *f.* deed.
thätig, active.
Thätigkeit, *f.* activity.
Thee, *m.* tea.
thun, do.
thunlich, practicable.
Thüre (-n), *f.* door.
tief, deep.
Tier (-e), *n.* animal.
Titel (-), *m.* title.
Tochter (ᵉ), *f.* daughter.
tot, dead.
Tracht (-en), *f.* costume.
traut, dear, beloved.
Treppe (-n), *f.* stairway; **die — hinab** (hinauf), down (up) the stairs.
Tritt (-e), *m.* step.
trocken, dry.
Trunk, *m.* drink.
Tuch (ᵉer), *n.* cloth.
Türkei', *f.* Turkey.

U.

über, over.
übersetzen, translate.
übersetzen, cross over, jump across.
überstehen, endure, finish suffering.
übrig, remaining, over.
Übung (-en), *f.* exercise.
Uhr (-en), *f.* watch, clock, o'clock.
umfallen, topple over.
umkommen, perish.
umgeben, surround.

umgehen (mit jemand), associate (with someone).
unabhängig, independent.
und, and; **u. s. w.** = **und so weiter,** and so forth.
undenkbar, inconceivable.
ungefähr, about, approximately; **von —,** by chance.
Unglück, *m.* misfortune.
unrecht, wrong.
unterdessen, meanwhile.
unterlassen, desist.
unterschlagen, embezzle.
Unterthan, *m.* subject.
Unthat (-en), *f.* misdeed.
unzweifelhaft, undoubtedly.

V.

Vase (-n), *f.* vase.
Vater (ˇ), *m.* father.
verblühen, fade, wilt.
verdrießlich, vexatious.
verfallen, fall to ruins.
vergeben, forgive.
vergebens, in vain.
Vergebung, *f.* forgiveness.
vergehen, perish.
verkaufen, sell.
verlassen, forsake, leave.
verlieren, lose.
vernehmen, hear.
verschaffen, procure.
versetzen, pawn, pledge, retort.
versichern, assure.
Versicherung (-en), *f.* assurance.
versprechen, promise.
Versprechung (-en), *f.* promise.
Verstand, *m.* reason, intellect.
verständlich, intelligible.
Verständnis, *n.* understanding.
verstehen, understand.
Vetter (-n), *m.* cousin.
vgl. = **vergleiche,** compare.
viel, much.
viele, many.
vielleicht, perhaps.
vier, four.
vierzehn, fourteen.
vierzig, forty.
Vogel (ˇ), *m.* bird.
vorhaben, purpose, intend.
vorschlagen, propose.
Vorsitzer (-), *m.* presiding officer, chairman.

W.

Waare (-n), *f.* ware.
wagen, venture.
wägen (*trans.*), weigh.
wahr, true.
Wahrheit (-en), *f.* truth.
wahrscheinlich, probably.
Wald (ˇer), *m.* forest.
wann, when.
was, what.
Wäsche *f.* linen, washing.
Wasser (-), *n.* water; **zu —,** by water.
Weg (-e), *m.* way.
Weib (-er), *n.* wife, woman.
weil, because, since.
weise, wise.
weiß, white.
weit, wide.
Welle (-n), *f.* wave.
Welt (-en), *f.* world.
wenig, little.
wenige, few.
wenigstens, at least.
wenn, if, when.
Werbung (-en), *f.* wooing.

wert, worth.
widersetzen, oppose.
wie, how.
wieder, again.
Wille (-n), *m.* will (43, 1).
willens sein, be willing.
Wissenschaft (-en), *f.* science.
wo, where.
Woche (-n), *f.* week; **eine — lang,** for a week; **vor einer —,** a week ago.
woher, whence.
wohin, whither.
wohl, well.
wohlhabend, well-to-do, prosperous.
wohnen, dwell.
wohnhaft, residing, settled.
Wohnhaus (ᵉer), *n.* dwelling house.
Wohnung (-en), *f.* dwelling.
Wohnzimmer (-), *n.* living room.
Wortfolge, *f.* order of words (in a sentence).
Wunsch (ᵉe), *m.* wish.

Z.

Zaun (ᵉe), *m.* enclosure, fence.
z. B. = zum Beispiel, for example.
zehn, ten.
Zeit (-en), *f.* time.
Zeitalter (-), *n.* epoch, age.
Zeitung (-en), *f.* newspaper.
zerfallen, fall to pieces.
zerreißen, tear to pieces.
zerrinnen, flow (pass) away.
zerschlagen, break to pieces.
ziehen, move, go, draw.
Ziege (-n), *f.* goat.
Zimmer (-), *n.* room.
zu, to.
zuerst, at first.
Zug (ᵉe), *m.* train, procession.
Zugvogel (ᵉ), *m.* bird of passage.
Zukunft, *f.* future.
zumachen, close, shut.
zuschlagen, shut violently.
Zutritt, *m.* access, entrance.
zwanzig, twenty.
zwar, true, it is true (*always used concessively*).
zwei, two.
zweierlei, of two kinds.
zweifach, twofold.
zweimal, twice.
zweitens, secondly.
Zweig (-e), *m.* twig.
zwölf, twelve.

INDEX

Numbers, unless otherwise stated, refer to sections. For peculiarities of Old verb forms, cf. the alphabetical list, p. 66.

aber: position, 206, 2.
accent: general rule, 6, 7; marks separable particle, 162, 3, 164; nouns in -'or shift, 39, Cl. V.
accusative: expresses time how long, when, 51; with prep. 50, 56; second acc. rare, 51, 2.
adjectives: declensional endings, 61; Mixed endings required, 60, 3, 73; New, 60, 2, 72; Old, 60, 1, 71; comparison, 75–77; used as nouns, 82; capitalized after etwas and nichts, 83; also proper adj., except of nationalities and those ending in -isch (82, note), 15; two or more co-ordinates inflected how, 74; uninflected, 58, 82 and note; more or less optional inflected, 64–66; in poetry, p. 148, foot-note; as adverbs, 201; adj. having e final, or in penultimate, drop this before inflection, 62.
adverbs: adjectives used as, 201; kinds, 200; position, 203 and note; adv. phrases, 53, 4; comparison, 202; adv. superlatives with am, aufs, 80, 201; in -ens, p. 120.
adjuncts (verbal): 213, 1–5.
agreement of verb with a following subject, 176; with a pron. standing for different persons, 177.
all (every), 129.
allein, 206, 3.
aller- intensifies superl., 79.
alphabet: sound of consonants, 11; vowels, 9; diphthongs, 10.
als: (= when) 209, 3; (= than), 81.
(an)statt: with Gen., 52; with Inf., 188.
article: infl., 25; contraction of def. with proposition, 26; is followed by New decl. of adj., 60, 2; used with fem. names of countries, 27, 6; other peculiarities of construction, 27.
auxiliary verbs: haben, 139, 166; sein, 158, 167; werden, 156, 169; modal aux. (sollen, können, etc.), 142, 170; position, 166, 1, 2; may be omitted, 166, 2.

-bar (adj.), p. 133.
be- (verb), p. 152.
"being" (passive), 171, note.
bezahlen: may have two acc., p. 137, foot-note.

capitals, 15, 82 and note.
cardinals: infl., 84.
case: general correspondence to Engl., 23; endings of nouns, 34; endings of adj., 61; may be omitted, 64; governed by prep., 50–

56; gen., how used, 53; dat., how used, 55.
-chen (dim.), p. 131; makes neut., 31.
Chor: takes Umlaut, 35, 3, note.
collectives in Ge- usually neut., p. 143, foot-note.
comparison: adj., 75–77; adverbs, 202.
compound verbs: inseparable, 161, 162; separable, 163; inflected, how, 160–163; exercises on, p. 154–157.
conditional subj.: in both terms of sentence, 184, 3; conclusion may instead be expressed by **würde**, 184, 3, note 2.
conjecture expressed by the future, 181.
conjugation: anomalous verbs, 139–144; New verbs, 136; Old verbs, 147; auxiliaries: modal, 142; **haben**, 139; **werden**, 156; **sein**, 158.
conjunctions: co-ordinate, 205; pure, 206; adverbial, 207; subordinate, 208, 209; effect of omitting introductory, 166, 2, note.

da(r) with prep. suffixed instead of *it* with prep., 113, 2, note.
das, impersonally, followed by pl. subj., 114.
daß: effect of omitting in subordinate clause, 166, 2, note.
dative: after prep., 54, 56; with certain adj., 55, 4; with verbs, 55, 2; ethical, 55, 1, 101.
declension: article 25; nouns, 33–47; adj. 57–74; numerals, 84–89; pronouns, 93–126; proper nouns, 46, 1; variable decl. of nouns, 44.
demonstrative pronouns: inflection, 108, 109; peculiarities of use, 111–115.
derivative elements in nouns and adj., pp. 131–135.
dero (archaic), 109, note 2.
des for **dessen**, 109.
dies (**dieses**), impersonally followed by plural subj., 114.
diphthongs, 10.
distribution of nouns into declensions: masc., 39; neut. 40; fem. 41.
do (aux.) not expressed, 137, Exerc. III, note.
doch (intensive), p. 124, foot-note.
du: how used, 97.
durch, 50; accented when, 162, 3.
dünken may be regular, 141, note.

e: added to adj. makes corresponding fem. nouns, p. 132; (dat.) added, optionally to monosyllabic nouns, 34, note 2; inserted before -t, -st, in verb infl. when, 137, 1; omitted in certain imperat., 146, 2.
-ei: takes accent, 6, 1; value of, p. 132.
-en, **-ern** (suffix), p. 134.
-el (suffix), p. 131.
ent- (prefix), p. 152.
entgegen, usually postpositive, 54, 1.
-er (suffix), makes indecl. adj. of cities and countries; 82 and p. 134.
-er (suffix), indicates agent, p. 131.
er- (prefix), p. 152.
er (pronoun); inflection, 93; peculiarities, 98, 1.
-ern (suffix) indicates material, p. 134.

Erz-, p. 136.
es giebt, gab, etc., invariable, 176, 2.

-fach (ein-fach, etc.), p. 120.
Floß, n., takes Umlaut, 35, 3, note.
formative elements in deriv. nouns, pp. 131–133; in adj., pp. 133–135.
future tense: how made, 169, 1; how used, 181; aux. verb in, 156.

ge-: in adj. and nouns, p. 136; in verbs, where omitted, 137, 3; position of, in separable verbs, 163.
gegenüber, either precedes or follows its noun, 54, 1.
gemäß, usually postpositive, 54, 1.
gender, 30, 31; nouns distributed into declensions according to gender, 39, 40; compounds take gender of last element, 31, note.
genitive: with prep., 52; certain prep. are postpositive, 52, 1, 2; after nouns or adj. 53, 2; after verbs, 53, 3; adv. phrases, 53, 4; in possessive pron. -er changed to -et before halben, wegen, um . . . willen, 94, 1; is supplied in rel. pron. welcher by forms from der, 120, foot-note; double form in pers. pron., 93, 94.
genug: position, 203.
Grimm's law of sound correspondence, p. 130.
groß: comparison, 76.
gut: comparison, 77.

haben: inflection, 139; used as aux., 166; inseparable compound of haben are regular, 139, note.
-haft: value of, 134; is fem., 31.
-halb (andert-halb, etc.), 92; halb (zehn, etc.) 90, 2.
halber: follows its noun, 52, 1.
half past, etc., 90, 2.
heißen: does not admit zu before an inf., 187, 3; puts verb in the active infinitive, when subject acc. is omitted, 187, note; has two participial forms, 190.
-heit: value of, p. 112.
helfen: does not admit zu before an inf., 187, 3; has two participial forms, 190.
her, 200, note.
Herr: before titles, does not prevent their inflection, 46, 2; drops e in cases of sing., 43, 3.
hin, 200, note.
hinter (as verb-particle): accented when, 162, 3.
hoch: inflection changes stem, 63; comparison, 76.
hören, changes participle to form of inf. when, 190.
hyphens, used to indicate common members of compounds, p. 125, foot-note 2.

-icht: value of, p. 134.
-ieren (verbs in): take accent on penult, 6, 1; admit no participial ge-, 137, 3.
if expressed or implied, 184, 3, note.
-ig: value of, p. 134.
Ihr (you), 96.
imperative: without pron., 137, 4; form of, 137, 147; omits -e in certain verbs, 146, 2; participles and infinitives in place of, 192, 210, note; lacking forms supplied by subjunct., 137, 4.

-in: value of, p. 132; doubles **n** before case-ending, 34, note 4.
indefinite pronoun: inflection, 126, 127; peculiarities of use, 128–130.
indirect discourse: requires subj., 185; tense in, 185, 186.
infinitives: with **werden** makes future tense, 169, used 1; without **zu**, 187, 1-3; with (an)**statt**, **ohne**, **um**, 188; as imper. 210, note; infinitive act. when subject acc. is omitted, 187, note; used substantively are always neut., p. 31.
inseparable verb particles, 162, 1-4.
interjections, 210.
interrogative pronouns: inflection, 116; supplanted by **wo(r)** in prepositional constructions, 117.
inversion occurs, 214, p. 112, foot-note.
-isch: value of, p. 135.

Kloster, *n.* takes **Umlaut**, 35, 3, note.
kommen, with verbs of motion, 191.

lassen: does not admit **zu** before an inf., 187, 3; puts verb in act. inf. when subject acc. is omitted, 187, note; has its participle of the form of infinitive, when, 190.
längs: either with gen. or dat., 52, 2.
lernen: does not admit **zu** before an inf. 187, 3.
lehren: does not admit **zu** before an inf., 187, 3.
-lei (**einer-lei**, etc.): value of, p. 120.
-lein: value of, p. 131; gender, 30.
-lich: value of, p. 135.
like (to), Exercise XXXV.
-ling: value of, p. 132.
-los: value of, p. 135.

Mal (**das erste Mal**, etc.), p. 120.
mal (**ein-mal**, etc.), p. 120.
man: indef. pron. 128; used instead of Engl. passive, 128.
miß-: value of, p. 136.
Mixed declension: of nouns, 33–36; of adj. 60, 3, 61, 67; requires to be used after **ein**, **kein** and possessives, 73.
modal auxiliaries: inflection, 142; do not admit **zu** before infinitives, 187, 3; have two participial forms, 142, 190; are used in verb phrases, 172.
modification of root vowel (Umlaut): general statement, 17; in Old decl. nouns, 35, 35, 3; in comparison of adj., 75; in verb conjugation, 146.

n (sign of dat. pl.) not added, when, 24, note 2.
nach (= *after*, *to*) precedes, (= *according to*) follows its noun, 54, 1.
Nachts (**des**), p. 114, foot-note.
nah: irregularly compared, 76.
Nation: pronunciation, p. 14.
New declension: of nouns, 33–36; of adj. 60, 2, 61, 67; requires to be used after demonstratives, 72.
nicht: position of, 203, note.
nichts: when followed by an adj. capitalizes it, 83.
-nis: value of, p. 133; doubles **s** before case-endings, 34, note 4.
nominal verb forms (verbal nouns), 132, 5; position in sentence, 166, 1, 2.
not any (= **kein**), 130.
nouns: distributed in decl. 33; gender, 30, 31; case endings, 34; examples of inflection, 36; irregu-

lar decl. 43; proper nouns, 46, 47; foreign, 45; feminines not inflected in the sing., 34; excepting in archaic use, in compounds and stereotyped phrases, 43, 4; are governed by prep., 50–56; nouns expressing weight, measure, etc., followed by another (unqualified) in the same case (apposition), 48, 1; after numeral and nouns of measure, take sing. form, 49; in -'or, shift accent, 39, Cl. V.

numerals: inflection, 84–89; cf. also Exercise XIV, page 120.

ob (prep.): (= *on account of*, archaic) with gen., (= *over*) with dat., 52, 2.

ob (conj.), 209, 1.

ohne, 50: with inf. 188.

Old verbs (certain ones) also follow the New conjugation, 149.

Old declension: of nouns, 33, 36; of adj., 60, 1, 61, 67; requires to be used when no determinatives are expressed, 71.

one (in *this one*, etc.) not rendered 115.

optative subjunctive, 184, 1.

-'**or** (nouns in): shift accent, 39, Cl. V.

order of words in sentence: normal (independent), 166, 1, 212; inverted, transposed, 166, 2, 215; in clauses having two verbal nouns, 215, note; effect of omitting introductory conj., in the dependent clause, 166, 2, note; of verbal adjuncts: separable prefixes come last, when, 213, 1; of more than one verbal noun the aux. come last, 213, 2; personal pron. come next to the verb, 213, 3; ordinary noun-order, 213, 4; ordinary order of adverbs (time, place, manner), 213, 5; exercise on, Ex. XXXVI.

ordinals: inflection and formation, 88.

participles: present and perfect, how made, 137, 147; are inflected like adj., p. 126, foot-note; past part. for present, after **kommen**, 191; used as an imper. 210, note; (of certain verbs) assumes form of infinitive, 142, 190; usual sign **ge-** omitted when, 137, 3; past part. in pass. voice, 171; double form in **werden**, 156.

passive voice: how made, 171; synopsis of, 175; Engl. passive construction often rendered by **man**, 128.

perfect tense phrases, 180.

personal pronouns: inflection, 93, 94; are repeated after relatives, when, 121; supplanted by demonstratives, 98, 99; are used as "ethical dative," 101, 1–3; instead of possessive pron., 101, 3.

personal verb: position, in independent clause, 166, 1, 212; in inverted order, 214; in dependent clause, 166, 2, 215 and note 2; may be omitted when, 215, note 3.

possessive pronouns: inflection, 103, 104; used as simple predicates, uninflected, 106; certain forms used substantively, p. 124, foot-note.

potential subjunctive, 184, 2.

prefixes to nouns and adj., p. 136; to verbs, 162.
prepositions: with gen., 52; dat., 54, 56; acc., 50, 56; are affixed to adverbial wo(r), 117, 123, and to adverbial da(r), 113, 2, note.; certain ones follow their subject, 52, 1, 54, 1.
progressive form not duplicated in German, foot-notes, pp. 53, 105.
proper names: inflect, 46, 1; remain uninflected, when, 46, 2; Biblical names take Latin decl.; geographical, 47.

quantity, 8.

reflexive pronoun: form of, 102, 1, 2; often has reciprocal meaning, 102, 3; no change of verb in reflex construction, 195; more common in German than English, 195, 2.
relative pronoun: inflection, 120; peculiarities of use, 123–125; may not be omitted, 125.

-sam: value of, p. 135.
-schaft: value of, p. 133.
sehen, changes participle to form of inf. before other inf., 190.
sein (aux. verb): inflection, 158; used with verbs of motion or change of condition, 167, 168.
separable compounds, 163; position of particle, 163, 1, 2; accented, 162, 3, 164; Exercise XXX.
sie (fem.), 93, 98.
sie (plural), 93.
Sie (polite address), 95.
sollen: inflection, 142; participle takes form of inf., when, 190; idiomatically expresses rumor, 194.
sondern, 206, 3.
spelling: comparison between new and old, 14.
subjunctive: of New conjugation, 137; of Old, 146, 3, 147; of anomalous verbs, 139–143; how used: optative subj., 184, 1; potential subj., 184, 2; conditional subj., 184, 3; of concession, 184, note; of indirect statement, 185.
syllabication, 2.
tenses, how made: present and preterit, 136, 137, 147; perfect phrases, 165–167; future and conditional phrases, 170; how used: present, 178, 1, 2; preterit, 179; perfect phrases, 180; future phrases, 181; in indirect statement, 185, 186.
time (of day), 90; how long, when, 51.
to, after verbs of motion, 54, 2.
trotz: takes either gen. or dat. 52, 2.
-tum: value of, p. 133.

um: with infinitive, 188.
Umlaut, cf. modification of root-vowel.
un-: p. 136.
-ung: value of, p. 133.
ungeachtet: generally follows its noun, 52, 1.
ur-: value of, p. 136.
über: separable particle when accented, 126, 3.

ver-: value of, p. 153; inseparable, 162, 1.

verbs: comparison between German and English, 132; Anomalous, 139–144; New, characteristic and inflection, 137; Old, characteristic and inflection, 145–147; classification of Old verbs, 148–157; alphabetical reference list, 160; compound verbs, 161–163; auxiliaries: **haben**, 139, **werden**, 156, **sein**, 158; those in **-eln**, **-ern**, drop **e** before the personal ending **-e**, 137, 2; those with radical vowel **e** usually change to **i** or **ie**, 146, 1; of motion and change of condition take aux. **sein**, 168; position of personal verb, cf. personal verb; agree with (understood) pronoun after subjects of different pers., 177; after impers. subject agree with following logical subject, 176.
verb-phrases: simple (with one aux.), 166; with **werden** (future and conditional), 170; passive, 171; with modal aux., 172; complex (more than one aux.), 173; word order in, 174; passive, 175.
verbal adjuncts, 213, 1–5.
viel: comparison, 77.
voll, 162, 3.
vowel modification, cf. **modification of vowels.**
vowel substitution (**Ablaut**), 18, 148, 150–157.

was für (**ein**), 119, 1.
was (= *that which*), when, 114.
wegen: generally follows its noun, 52, 1.
werden: inflection, 156; as aux. in future conditional and passive phrases, 169; how transl., p. 104, foot-note.
wes for **wessen**, 116.
wider: separable when, 162, 2.
wie: in comparison, 81.
wo(r): may take the place of interrogatives, 117.
wollen: inflection, 142; participle assumes form of inf., 190; idiomatically expresses *claim*, 194; as aux., 170; exceptionally used for **sein**, 193, note.

zer-: value of, p. 153.
zu: position in separable verbs, 163.
zufolge: placed after nouns, takes the dat.; before the gen., 52, 2.
zuwider, usually postpositive, 54, 1.

PRESS OF CARL H. HEINZTEMANN, BOSTON, MASS., U. S. A.

Text-Books in German

FIRST LESSONS

Dreyspring's Easy Lessons in German	$0.60
Woodbury's Easy Lessons in German	.90
Worman's First German Book	.30
Worman's Second German Book	.40

METHODS

Edgren and Fossler's Brief German Grammar	.75
Ahn's German Grammar	.70
Bernhardt's Deutsches Sprach- und Lesebuch. Parts I. and II. Each	1.10
Dreyspring's Cumulative Method	1.20
Gastineau's Conversation Method in German	1 25
Keller's First Year in German	1.00
Ollendorff's Method in German (Adler)	.87
Van der Smissen and Frazer's High School German Grammar	1 25
Woodbury's New Method with German	1.35
Worman's Elementary German Grammar	1.00
Worman's Complete German Grammar	1.40

READERS

Eclectic German Readers:

Primer	20 cents	Third Reader	42 cents
First Reader	25 cents	Fourth Reader	60 cents
Second Reader	35 cents	Fifth Reader	72 cents

Dreyspring's First German Reader	.60
Johonnot's Buch von Katzen und Hunden	.30
Worman's Elementary German Reader	.90
Worman's Collegiate German Reader	1.25
Worman's German Echo (Conversation)	.90

LITERATURE

Keller's Bilder aus der Deutschen Litteratur	.75
Bernhardt's Litteraturgeschichte	.75

Modern German Texts: Carefully selected with regard to interest and style, and supplied with notes, vocabularies, etc. Price List of these texts will be furnished on application.

Germania Texts: Reprinted from Germania. A series of texts for advanced students, furnishing chapters from popular German writers. 12 numbers, each . . .10

Copies of any of the above books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(68)

Modern German Texts

The texts of this series have been carefully selected with regard to the interest of the story and the style of language. They are set in large, clear type, uniformly bound in specially designed flexible covers, and furnished at a moderate price.

ARNOLD. Ein Regentag auf dem Lande. Edited by A. J. W. Kern	$0.25
BERNHARDT. Im Zwielicht. Vol. I.	.65
Im Zwielicht. Vol. II.	.65
BERNHARDT. Freudvoll und Leidvoll	.65
BERNHARDT. Es War Einmal	.65
EBNER-ESCHENBACH. Krambambuli and— KLAUSSMANN. Memoiren eines Offizierburschen Edited by A. W. Spanhoofd	.25
FREYTAG. Die Journalisten. Edited by J. Norton Johnson	.35
HEYSE. Das Mädchen von Treppi, and Marion. Edited by W. Bernhardt	.30
HILLERN. Höher als die Kirche. Edited by F. A. Dauer	.25
LESSING. Minna von Barnhelm. Edited by M. B. Lambert	.50
RIEHL. Die Vierzehn Nothelfer, and Trost um Trost. Edited by K. E. Sihler.	.30
RIEHL. Der Fluch der Schönheit. Edited by M. A. Frost	.30
SCHILLER. Gustav Adolf in Deutschland. Edited by W. Bernhardt	.45
SEIDEL. Die Monate. Edited by R. Arrowsmith	.25
SEIDEL. Der Lindenbaum, and Other Stories. Edited by Ernst Richard	.25
SEIDEL. Herr Omnia. Edited by J. Matthewman	.25
SEIDEL. Leberecht Hühnchen und andere Sonderlinge. Edited by W. Bernhardt	.30
SPYRI. Rosenresli, and Der Toni Von Kandergrund	.25
STIFTER. Das Heidedorf. Edited by Max Lentz	.25
STORM. Immensee. Edited by F. A. Dauer	.25
VOLKMANN-LEANDER. Träumereien. Edited by A. Hanstein	.35
ZSCHOKKE. Der Zerbrochene Krug. (Roelker)	.25

Copies of the New German Texts will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

Germania Texts

Edited by A. W. SPANHOOFD

These Texts include important and interesting chapters from the works of the best German authors, and are intended for advanced students in Academies, Colleges, Universities, and German-American schools, who wish to make a thorough study of German Literature. They are issued in pamphlet form at a uniform price of **ten cents.**

The series embraces the following works:

1. Bürgers Lenore. With Sketch of Bürger's Life and Works and Extracts from ERICH SCHMIDT's celebrated essay.
2. Vergleichung Goethes und Schillers; Lessings und Herders. G. G. GERVINUS.
3. Klopstocks Bedeutung fur sein Zeitalter. C. L. CHOLEVIUS.
4. Reineke Fuchs. H. KURZ.
5. Die Krönung Josefs II. GOETHE. With Notes.
6. Lessings Dramaturgie. G. G. GERVINUS. Lessings Minna von Barnhelm. H. KURZ.
7. Meier Helmbrecht. Dr. H. KHULL.
8. Wieland. From GOETHE's Gedächtnisrede.
9. Wielands Oberon. H. KURZ.
10. Schiller's Lied von der Glocke. With Notes. A. W. Spanhoofd.
11. Matthias Claudius als Volksdichter. W. HERBST.
12. Schiller's Kraniche des Ibykus and Eleusische Fest. With Notes. A. W. Spanhoofd.

Copies of any of the Germania Texts will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price (10 cents) by the Publishers:

American Book Company

NEW YORK • CINCINNATI • CHICAGO

(72)